
CONTENTS

| | | |
|----------|---|-----------|
| I | NUMERICAL SOLUTIONS TO ORDINARY DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS | 5 |
| 1 | NUMERICAL SOLUTIONS TO INITIAL VALUE PROBLEMS | 6 |
| 1.1 | Numerical approximation of Differentiation | 7 |
| 1.1.1 | Theorems about Ordinary Differential Equations | 12 |
| 1.2 | One-Step Methods | 14 |
| 1.2.1 | Euler's Method | 15 |
| 1.2.2 | Problem Sheet | 20 |
| 2 | HIGHER ORDER METHODS | 21 |
| 2.1 | Higher order Taylor Methods | 21 |
| 3 | RUNGE-KUTTA METHOD | 23 |
| 3.1 | Derivation of Second Order Runge Kutta | 24 |
| 3.2 | Runge Kutta second order: Midpoint method | 25 |
| 3.3 | Runge Kutta third order: Modified Euler method | 26 |
| 3.4 | Runge Kutta forth order | 26 |
| 3.5 | Convergence Analysis | 27 |
| 3.6 | Problem Sheet 2 | 32 |
| 4 | MULTI-STEP METHODS | 34 |
| 4.1 | Derivation of a explicit multistep method | 35 |
| 4.1.1 | General Derivation of a explicit method Adams-Bashforth | 35 |
| 4.1.2 | Adams-Bashforth three step method | 39 |
| 4.1.3 | Adams-Bashforth four step method | 39 |
| 4.2 | Derivation of the implicit multi-step method | 41 |
| 4.3 | Table of Adam's methods | 44 |
| 4.4 | Predictor-Corrector method | 45 |
| 4.5 | Improved step-size multi-step method | 45 |
| 4.6 | Problem Sheet 3 | 48 |
| 5 | CONSISTENCY, CONVERGENCE AND STABILITY | 51 |
| 5.1 | One Step Methods | 51 |
| 5.2 | Multi-step methods | 53 |
| 5.3 | Problem Sheet 4 | 58 |
| 6 | INITIAL VALUE PROBLEM REVIEW QUESTIONS | 59 |
| 7 | BOUNDARY VALUE PROBLEMS | 64 |
| 7.1 | Systems of equations | 64 |
| 7.2 | Higher order Equations | 65 |
| 7.3 | Boundary Value Problems | 66 |
| 7.4 | Some theorems about boundary value problem | 68 |
| 7.5 | Shooting Methods | 69 |
| 7.5.1 | Linear Shooting method | 69 |

| | | |
|--|---|-----|
| 7.5.2 | The Shooting method for non-linear equations | 71 |
| 7.6 | Finite Difference method | 74 |
| II NUMERICAL SOLUTIONS TO PARTIAL DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS 78 | | |
| 8 | PARTIAL DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS | 79 |
| 8.1 | Introduction | 79 |
| 8.2 | PDE Classification | 79 |
| 9 | DIFFERENCE OPERATORS | 83 |
| 10 | PARABOLIC EQUATIONS | 84 |
| 10.1 | An explicit method for the heat eqn | 84 |
| 10.1.1 | Example explicit method for the Heat Equation | 85 |
| 10.2 | An implicit (FTCS) method for the heat eqn | 91 |
| 10.2.1 | Example implicit (FTCS) for the Heat Equation | 92 |
| 10.3 | Crank Nicholson Implicit method | 97 |
| 10.3.1 | Example Crank-Nicholson solution of the Heat Equation | 98 |
| 10.4 | The Theta Method | 103 |
| 10.5 | The General Matrix form | 103 |
| 10.6 | Derivative Boundary Conditions | 104 |
| 10.6.1 | Example Derivative Boundary Conditions | 104 |
| 10.7 | Local Truncation Error and Consistency | 107 |
| 10.8 | Consistency and Compatibility | 109 |
| 10.9 | Convergence and Stability | 109 |
| 10.10 | Stability by the Fourier Series method (von Neumann's method) | 109 |
| 10.10.1 | Stability for the explicit FTCS Method | 110 |
| 10.10.2 | Stability for the implicit BTCS Method | 110 |
| 10.10.3 | Stability for the Crank Nicholson Method | 111 |
| 11 | PARTIAL DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS QUESTIONS | 112 |
| 11.1 | Parabolic Equations Questions | 112 |
| 11.2 | Explicit Equations | 112 |
| 11.3 | Implicit Methods | 115 |
| 11.4 | Crank Nicholson Methods | 118 |
| 12 | ELLIPTIC PDE'S | 121 |
| 12.1 | The five point scheme | 121 |
| 12.2 | Specific Examples | 124 |
| 12.2.1 | Example 1: Homogeneous equation with non-zero boundary | 124 |
| 12.2.2 | Example 2: non-homogeneous equation with zero boundary | 127 |
| 12.2.3 | Example 3: Inhomogeneous equation with non-zero boundary | 130 |
| 12.3 | Consistency and Convergence | 133 |
| 13 | ELLIPTIC EQUATIONS QUESTIONS | 138 |
| 14 | HYPERBOLIC EQUATIONS | 141 |

| | | |
|--------|---|-----|
| 14.1 | The Wave Equation | 142 |
| 14.2 | Finite Difference Method for Hyperbolic equations | 143 |
| 14.2.1 | Discretisation of the scalar equation | 143 |
| 14.3 | Analysis of the Finite Difference Methods | 144 |
| 14.4 | Consistency | 144 |
| 14.5 | Stability | 144 |
| 14.6 | Courant Freidrich Lewy Condition | 144 |
| 15 | VARIATIONAL METHODS | 146 |
| 15.1 | Ritz -Galerkin Method | 148 |
| 15.2 | Finite Element | 149 |
| 15.3 | Error | 150 |
| 16 | PROBLEM SHEET | 153 |
| 17 | BIBLIOGRAPHY | 157 |
| 18 | INDEX | 159 |

ACRONYMS

| | |
|------------|---------------------------------|
| IVP | Initial Value Problems |
| BVP | Boundary Value Problems |
| ODE | Ordinary Differential Equations |
| PDE | Partial Differential Equations |
| RK | Runge Kutta |

Part I

NUMERICAL SOLUTIONS TO ORDINARY
DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS

NUMERICAL SOLUTIONS TO INITIAL VALUE PROBLEMS

An Ordinary differential equations Ordinary Differential Equation (ODE's) is of the form

$$y' = f(x) \quad (1)$$

f is a function. The general solution to (1) is of the form

$$y = \int f(x)dx + c$$

usually containing an arbitrary constant c . In order to determine the solution uniquely it is necessary to impose an initial condition.

$$y(x_0) = y_0 \quad (2)$$

Example 1

The general solution of the equation

$$y' = \sin(x) \quad (3)$$

is

$$y = -\cos(x) + c$$

If we specify the condition

$$y\left(\frac{\pi}{3}\right) = 2$$

then it is easy to find $c = 2.5$.

Thus the desired solution is

$$y = 2.5 - \cos(x)$$

The more general Ordinary Differential Equation is of the form

$$y' = f(x, y) \quad (4)$$

is approached in a similar fashion.

Let us consider

$$y' = a(x)y(x) + b(x)$$

The given functions $a(x)$ and $b(x)$ are assumed continuous for this equation

$$f(x, z) = a(x)z(x) + b(x)$$

and the general solution can be found using the method of integrating factors

Example 2

$$y'(x) = \lambda y(x) + b(x) \quad x \geq x_0 \quad (5)$$

where λ is a given constant. Multiplying the equation (5) by the integrating factor $e^{-\lambda x}$, we can reformulate

$$\frac{d(e^{-\lambda x}y(x))}{dx} = e^{-\lambda x}b(x)$$

Integrating both sides from x_0 to x we obtain

$$(e^{-\lambda x}y(x)) = c + \int_{x_0}^x e^{-\lambda t}b(t)dt$$

so the general solution is

$$y(x) = ce^{\lambda x} + \int_{x_0}^x e^{\lambda(x-t)}b(t)dt$$

with c an arbitrary constant

$$c = e^{-\lambda x_0}y(x_0)$$

◇ In general it is not possible to solve the initial value problem analytically. For example

$$y' = e^{xy^4}$$

1.1 NUMERICAL APPROXIMATION OF DIFFERENTIATION

Numerical approximations of $\frac{df}{dx}$ using **Taylor's theorem** we have, expand about $f(x_0)$ we have

$$f(x_1) = f(x_0)(x_1 - x_0)f'(x_0) + \tau \quad (6)$$

where τ is the truncation error,

$$\tau = \frac{(x_1 - x_0)^2}{2!}f''(\xi) \quad \xi \in [x_0, x_1]. \quad (7)$$

Rearranging and letting $h = x_1 - x_0$ we have

$$f'(x_0) = \frac{f(x_1) - f(x_0)}{h} - \frac{h}{2}f''(\xi)$$

This can also be derived using a variation on the Lagrange interpolation formula called the divided difference.

We can say that

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= P_n(x) + \text{error} \\ &= f(x_0) + f[x_0, x_1](x - x_0) + f[x_0, x_1, x_2](x - x_0)(x - x_1) \\ &\quad + \dots + f[x_0, \dots, x_n] \prod_{i=0}^{n-1} (x - x_i) + \text{error} \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} f[x_0, x_1] &= \frac{f(x_1) - f(x_0)}{x_1 - x_0} \\ f[x_0, x_1, x_2] &= \frac{f[x_1, x_2] - f[x_0, x_1]}{x_2 - x_0} \\ f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n] &= \frac{f[x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n] - f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_{n-1}]}{x_n - x_0} \end{aligned}$$

Differentiating $P_n(x)$

$$\begin{aligned} P'_n(x) &= f[x_0, x_1] + f[x_0, x_1, x_2]\{(x - x_0) + (x - x_1)\} \\ &\quad + \dots + f[x_0, \dots, x_n] \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} \frac{(x - x_0) \dots (x - x_{n-1})}{(x - x_i)} \end{aligned}$$

and the error becomes

$$\text{error} = (x - x_0) \dots (x - x_n) \frac{f^{n+1}(\xi)}{(n+1)!}.$$

Applying this to define our first derivative, we have

$$f'(x) = f[x_0, x_1] = \frac{f(x_1) - f(x_0)}{x_1 - x_0}$$

This leads us other formulas for computing the derivatives

$$f'(x) = \frac{f(x_1) - f(x_0)}{x_1 - x_0} + O(h) \quad \text{Euler}$$

$$f'(x) = \frac{f(x_1) - f(x_{-1})}{x_1 - x_{-1}} + O(h^2) \quad \text{Central}$$

Using the same method we can get out computational estimates for the 2nd derivative

$$f''(x_0) = \frac{f_2 - 2f_1 + f_0}{h^2} + O(h^2)$$

$$f''(x_0) = \frac{f_1 - 2f_0 + f_{-1}}{h^2} + O(h^2) \quad \text{central}$$

Example 3

Applying the Euler formula to the first order Ordinary Differential Equation in equation (4)

$$y' = f(x, y)$$

$$a \leq x \leq b$$

is approximated by

$$\frac{w_{i+1} - w_i}{h} = f(w_i, w)$$

1.1.0.1 Simple example ODE $y' = \sin(x)$ **Example 4**

Applying the Euler formula to the first order equation (3)

$$y' = \sin(x)$$

$$0 \leq x \leq 10$$

is approximated by

$$\frac{w_{i+1} - w_i}{h} = \sin(x_i)$$

Rearranging

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + h \sin(x_i)$$

```

1 # Numerical solution of a Cosine differential equation
2 import numpy as np
3 import math
4 import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
5
6 dx=0.01
7 x_end=10
8
9 N=int(x_end/dx)
10 Numerical_Solution=np.zeros(N)
11 x=np.zeros(N)
12 Analytic_Solution=np.zeros(N)
13
14 # Initial Conditions
15 Numerical_Solution[0]=1.0
16 x[0]=0
17 Analytic_Solution[0]=1.0
18 for i in range(1,N):
19     Numerical_Solution[i]=Numerical_Solution[i-1]+dx*math.sin(
20         x[i-1])
21     x[i]=x[i-1]+dx
22     Analytic_Solution[i]=2.0-math.cos(x[i])

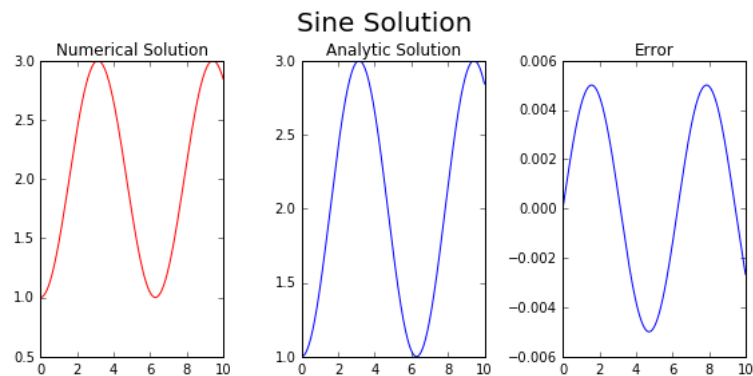
```

```

22
23 fig = plt.figure(figsize=(8,4))
24
25 # — left hand plot
26 ax = fig.add_subplot(1,3,1)
27 plt.plot(x,Numerical_Solution , color='red')
28 #ax.legend(loc='best')
29 plt.title('Numerical Solution')
30
31 # — right hand plot
32 ax = fig.add_subplot(1,3,2)
33 plt.plot(x,Analytic_Solution , color='blue')
34 plt.title('Analytic Solution')
35
36 #ax.legend(loc='best')
37 ax = fig.add_subplot(1,3,3)
38 plt.plot(x,Analytic_Solution-Numerical_Solution , color='blue')
39 plt.title('Error')
40
41 # — title , explanatory text and save
42 fig.suptitle('Sine Solution' , fontsize=20)
43 plt.tight_layout()
44 plt.subplots_adjust(top=0.85)

```

Listing 1.1: Python Numerical and Analytical Solution of Eqn 3

Figure 1.1.1: Python output: Numerical (left), Analytic (middle) and error(right) for $y' = \sin(x)$ Equation 3 with $h=0.01$ 1.1.0.2 Simple example problem population growth $y' = \epsilon y$ **Example 5**

The general solution of the equation

$$y' = \epsilon y \quad (8)$$

is

$$y = e^{\epsilon x}$$

If we specify the condition

$$y(0) = 1$$

and

$$\varepsilon = 0.5$$

Thus the analytic solution is

$$y = e^{-0.5x}$$

Example 6

Applying the Euler formula to the first order equation (8)

$$y' = 0.5y$$

is approximated by

$$\frac{w_{i+1} - w_i}{h} = 0.5w_i$$

Rearranging

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + h(0.5w_i)$$

```

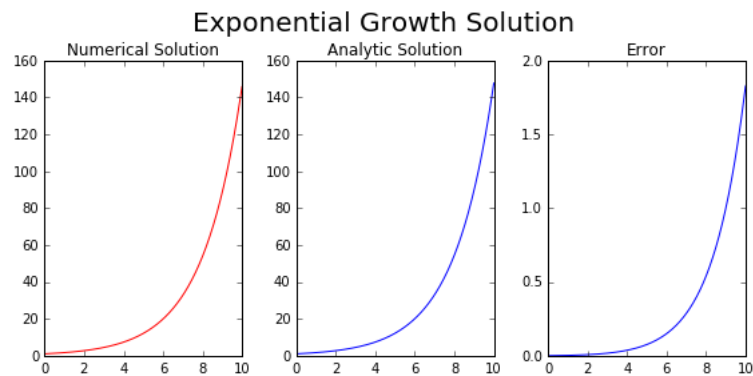
1 # Numerical solution of a differential equation
2 import numpy as np
3 import math
4 import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
5
6 dx=0.01
7 tau=0.5
8 x_end=10
9
10 N=int(x_end/dx)
11 Numerical_Solution=np.zeros(N)
12 x=np.zeros(N)
13 Analytic_Solution=np.zeros(N)
14
15 Numerical_Solution[0]=1
16 x[0]=0
17 Analytic_Solution[0]=1
18
19 for i in range(1,N):
20     Numerical_Solution[i]=Numerical_Solution[i-1]+dx*(tau)*
21     Numerical_Solution[i-1]
22     x[i]=x[i-1]+dx
23     Analytic_Solution[i]=math.exp(tau*x[i])
24
25 fig = plt.figure(figsize=(8,4))
26 # — left hand plot
27 ax = fig.add_subplot(1,3,1)
28 plt.plot(x,Numerical_Solution,color='red')
```

```

29 #ax.legend(loc='best')
30 plt.title('Numerical Solution')
31
32 # — right hand plot
33 ax = fig.add_subplot(1,3,2)
34 plt.plot(x, Analytic_Solution , color='blue')
35 plt.title('Analytic Solution')
36
37 #ax.legend(loc='best')
38 ax = fig.add_subplot(1,3,3)
39 plt.plot(x, Analytic_Solution - Numerical_Solution , color='blue')
40 plt.title('Error')
41
42 # — title , explanatory text and save
43 fig.suptitle('Exponential Growth Solution' , fontsize=20)
44 plt.tight_layout()
45 plt.subplots_adjust(top=0.85)

```

Listing 1.2: Python Numerical and Analytical Solution of Eqn 8

Figure 1.1.2: Python output: Numerical (left), Analytic (middle) and error(right) for $y' = \varepsilon y$ Eqn 8 with $h=0.01$ and $\varepsilon = 0.5$ **Example 7**

$$y' = \varepsilon(y + y \sin(x)) \quad (9)$$

1.1.1 Theorems about Ordinary Differential Equations

Definition A function $f(t, y)$ is said to satisfy a **Lipschitz Condition** in the variable y on the set $D \subset \mathbb{R}^2$ if a constant $L > 0$ exist with the property that

$$|f(t, y_1) - f(t, y_2)| < L|y_1 - y_2|$$

whenever $(t, y_1), (t, y_2) \in D$. The constant L is call the Lipschitz Condition of f .

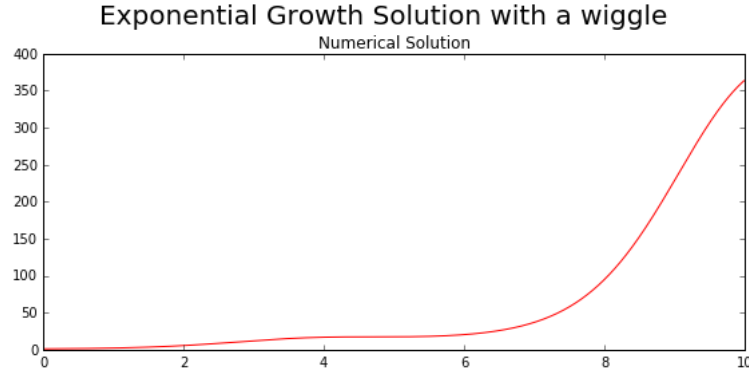


Figure 1.1.3: Python output: Numerical solution for $y' = \varepsilon(y + y \sin(x))$ Equation 9 with $h=0.01$ and $\varepsilon = 0.5$

Definition A set $D \subset \mathbb{R}^2$ is said to be convex if whenever $(t_1, y_1), (t_2, y_2)$ belong to D the point $((1 - \lambda)t_1 + \lambda t_2, (1 - \lambda)y_1 + \lambda y_2)$ also belongs in D for each $\lambda \in [0, 1]$.

Theorem 1.1.1. Suppose $f(t, y)$ is defined on a convex set $D \subset \mathbb{R}^2$. If a constant $L > 0$ exists with

$$\left| \frac{\partial f(t, y)}{\partial y} \right| \leq L$$

then f satisfies a Lipschitz Condition on D in the variable y with Lipschitz constant L .

Theorem 1.1.2. Suppose that $D = \{(t, y) | a \leq t \leq b, -\infty < y < \infty\}$ and $f(t, y)$ is continuous on D in the variable y then the initial value problem has a unique solution $y(t)$ for $a \leq t \leq b$

Definition The initial-value problem

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = f(t, y) \quad a \leq t \leq b$$

with initial condition

$$y(a) = \alpha$$

is said to be well posed if:

- A unique solution $y(t)$ to the problem exists.
- For any $\varepsilon > 0$ there exists a positive constant $k(\varepsilon)$ with the property that whenever $|\varepsilon_0| < \varepsilon$ and with $|\delta(t)| \leq \varepsilon$ on $[a, b]$ a unique solution $z(t)$ to the problem

$$\frac{dz}{dt} = f(t, z) + \delta(t) \quad a \leq t \leq b \quad (10)$$

$$z(a) = \alpha + \varepsilon_0$$

exists with

$$|z(t) - y(t)| < k(\varepsilon)\varepsilon$$

The problem specified by (10) is called a perturbed problem associated with the original problem. ◦

It assumes the possibility of an error $\delta(\varepsilon)$ being introduced to the statement of the differential equation as well as an error ε_0 being present in the initial condition. ◦

Theorem 1.1.3. Suppose $D = \{(t, y) | a \leq t \leq b, -\infty < y < \infty\}$. If $f(t, y)$ is continuous and satisfies a Lipschitz Condition in the variable y on the set D , then the initial value problem

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = f(t, y) \quad a \leq t \leq b$$

with initial condition

$$y(a) = \alpha$$

is well-posed.

Example 8

$$y'(x) = -y(x) + 1 \quad 0 \leq x \leq b \quad y(0) = 1$$

has the solution $y(x) = 1$. The perturbed problem

$$z'(x) = -z(x) + 1 \quad 0 \leq x \leq b \quad z(0) = 1 + \varepsilon$$

has the solution $z(x) = 1 + \varepsilon e^{-x}$ $x \leq 0$.

Thus

$$y(x) - z(x) = -\varepsilon e^{-x}$$

$$|y(x) - z(x)| \leq |\varepsilon| \quad x \geq 0$$

Therefore the problem is said to be stable

1.2 ONE-STEP METHODS

Dividing $[a, b]$ in to N subsections such that we now have $N+1$ points of equal spacing $h = \frac{b-a}{N}$. This gives the formula $t_i = a + ih$ for $i = 0, 1, \dots, N$. One-Step Methods for Ordinary Differential Equation's only use one previous point to get the approximation for the next point. The initial condition gives $y(a = t_0) = \alpha$, this gives the starting point of our one step method. The general formula for One-step methods is

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + h\Phi(t_i, w_i, h)$$

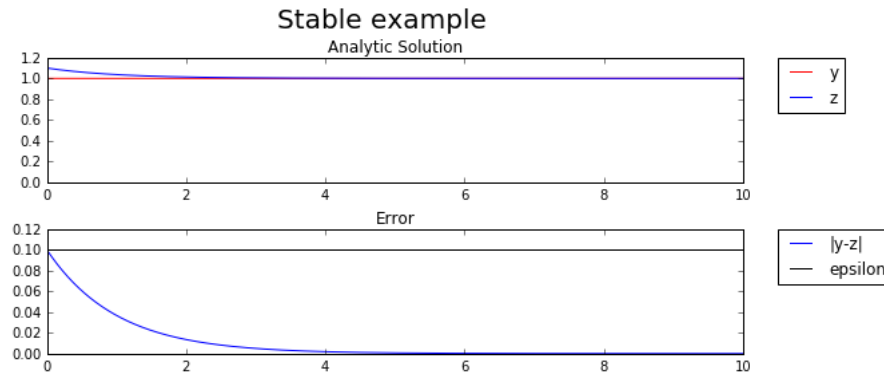


Figure 1.1.4: Python output: Illustrating Stability $y'(x) = -y(x) + 1$ with the initial condition $y(0) = 1$ and $z'(x) = -z(x) + 1$ with the initial condition $z(0) = 1 + \varepsilon$, $\varepsilon = 0.1$

where w_i is the approximated solution of the Ordinary Differential Equation at the point t_i

$$w_i \approx y_i$$

.

1.2.1 Euler's Method

The simplest example of a one step method is Euler. The derivative is replaced by the Euler approximation. The Ordinary Differential Equation

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = f(t, y)$$

becomes

$$\frac{y_i - y_{i-1}}{h} = f(t_{i-1}, y_{i-1}) + T$$

T is the truncation error.

Example 9

$$y' = -\frac{y^2}{1+t} \quad a = 0 \leq t \leq b = 0.5$$

with the initial condition $y(0) = 1$ the Euler approximation is

$$w_{i+1} = w_i - \frac{hw_i^2}{1+t_i}$$

where w_i is the approximation of y at t_i .
Solving, let $t_i = ih$ where $h = 0.05$, from the initial condition we have $w_0 = 1$ at $i = 0$ our method is

$$w_1 = w_0 - \frac{0.05w_0^2}{1+t_0} = 1 - \frac{0.05}{1+0} = 0.95$$

and so forth, each approximation w_i requiring the previous, thus creating a sequence starting at w_0 to w_n .

| i | t_i | w_i |
|---|-------|------------|
| 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 1 | 0.05 | 0.95 |
| 2 | 0.1 | 0.90702381 |
| 3 | 0.15 | 0.86962871 |
| 4 | 0.2 | 0.8367481 |
| 5 | 0.25 | 0.80757529 |
| 6 | 0.3 | 0.78148818 |
| 7 | 0.35 | 0.7579988 |
| 8 | 0.4 | 0.73671872 |
| 9 | 0.45 | 0.71733463 |

Lemma 1.2.1. For all $x \geq 0.1$ and any positive m we have

$$0 \leq (1+x)^m \leq e^{mx}$$

Lemma 1.2.2. If s and t are positive real numbers $\{a_i\}_{i=0}^N$ is a sequence satisfying $a_0 \geq \frac{-t}{s}$ and $a_{i+1} \leq (1+s)a_i + t$ then

$$a_{i+1} \leq e^{(i+1)s} \left(a_0 + \frac{t}{s} \right) - \frac{t}{s}$$

Theorem 1.2.3. Suppose f is continuous and satisfies a Lipschitz Condition with constant L on $D = \{(t, y) | a \leq t \leq b, -\infty < y < \infty\}$ and that a constant M exists with the property that

$$|y''(t)| \leq M.$$

Let $y(t)$ denote the unique solution of the Initial Value Problem

$$y' = f(t, y) \quad a \leq t \leq b \quad y(a) = \alpha$$

and w_0, w_1, \dots, w_N be the approx generated by the Euler method for some positive integer N . Then for $i = 0, 1, \dots, N$

$$|y(t_i) - w_i| \leq \frac{Mh}{2L} |e^{L(t_i-a)} - 1|$$

Proof. When $i = 0$ the result is clearly true since $y(t_0) = w_0 = \alpha$. From Taylor we have,

$$y(t_{i+1}) = y(t_i) + hf(t_i, y(t_i)) + \frac{h^2}{2}y''(\xi_i)$$

where $x_i \geq \xi_i \geq x_{i+1}$, and from this we get the Euler approximation

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + hf(t_i, w_i)$$

Consequently we have

$$y(t_{i+1}) - w_{i+1} = y(t_i) - w_i + h[f(t_i, y(t_i)) - f(t_i, w_i)] + \frac{h^2}{2}y''(\xi_i)$$

and

$$|y(t_{i+1}) - w_{i+1}| \leq |y(t_i) - w_i| + h|f(t_i, y(t_i)) - f(t_i, w_i)| + \frac{h^2}{2}|y''(\xi_i)|$$

Since f satisfies a Lipschitz Condition in the second variable with constant L and $|y''| \leq M$ we have

$$|y(t_{i+1}) - w_{i+1}| \leq (1 + hL)|y(t_i) - w_i| + \frac{h^2}{2}M$$

Using Lemma 1.2.1 and 1.2.2 and letting $a_j = (y_j - w_j)$ for each $j = 0, \dots, N$ while $s = hL$ and $t = \frac{h^2M}{2}$ we see that

$$|y(t_{i+1}) - w_{i+1}| \leq e^{(i+1)hL}(|y(t_0) - w_0| + \frac{h^2M}{2hL}) - \frac{h^2M}{2hL}$$

Since $w_0 - y_0 = 0$ and $(i+1)h = t_{i+1} - t_0 = t_{i+1} - a$ we have

$$|y(t_i) - w_i| \leq \frac{Mh}{2L}|e^{L(t_i-a)} - 1|$$

for each $i = 0, 1, \dots, N-1$. □

Example 10

$$y' = y - t^2 + 1 \quad 0 \leq t \leq 2 \quad y(0) = 0.5$$

the Euler approximation is

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + h(w_i - t_i^2 + 1)$$

choosing $h = 0.2$, $t_i = 0.2i$ and $w_0 = 0.5$.
 $f(t, y) = y - t^2 + 1$

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = 1$$

so $L = 1$. The exact solution is $y(t) = (t + 1)^2 - \frac{1}{2}e^t$
 from this we have

$$y''(t) = 2 - 0.5e^t$$

$$|y''(t)| \leq 0.5e^2 - 2 \quad t \in [0, 2]$$

Using the above inequality we have we have

$$|y_i - w_i| \leq \frac{h}{2}(0.5e^2 - 2)(e^{t_i} - 1)$$

○

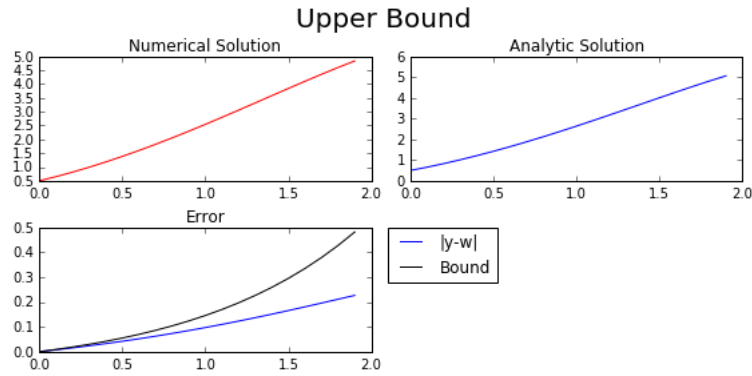


Figure 1.2.1: Python output: Illustrating upper bound $y' = y - t^2 + 1$ with the initial condition $y(0) = 0.5$

Euler method is a typical one step method, in general such methods are given by function $\Phi(t, y; h; f)$. Our initial condition is $w_0 = y_0$, for $i = 0, 1, \dots$

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + h\Phi(t_i, w_i : h : f)$$

with $t_{i+1} = t_i + h$.

In the Euler case $\Phi(t, y; h; f) = f(t, y)$ and is of order 1.

Theorem 1.2.3 can be extend to higher order one step methods with the variation

$$|y(t_i) - w_i| \leq \frac{Mh^p}{2L} |e^{L(t_i-a)} - 1|$$

where p is the order of the method.

Definition The difference method $w_0 = \alpha$

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + h\Phi(t_i, w_i)$$

for $i = 0, 1, \dots, N - 1$ has a local truncation error given by

$$\begin{aligned}\tau_{i+1}(h) &= \frac{y_{i+1} - (y_i + h\Phi(t_i, y_i))}{h} \\ &= \frac{y_{i+1} - y_i}{h} - \Phi(t_i, y_i)\end{aligned}$$

for each $i = 0, \dots, N - 1$ where as usual $y_i = y(t_i)$ denotes the exact solution at t_i .

For Euler method the local truncation error at the i th step for the problem

$$y' = f(t, y) \quad a \leq t \leq b \quad y(a) = \alpha$$

is

$$\tau_{i+1}(h) = \frac{y_{i+1} - y_i}{h} - f(t_i, y_i)$$

for $i = 0, \dots, N - 1$.

But we know Euler has

$$\tau_{i+1} = \frac{h}{2} y''(\xi_i) \quad \xi_i \in (t_i, t_{i+1})$$

When $y''(t)$ is known to be bounded by a constant M on $[a, b]$ this implies

$$|\tau_{i+1}(h)| \leq \frac{h}{2} M \sim O(h)$$

1.2.2 Problem Sheet

1. Show that the following functions satisfy the Lipschitz condition on y on the indicated set D :

a) $f(t, y) = ty^3$, $D = \{(t, y); -1 \leq t \leq 1, 0 \leq y \leq 10\}$

b) $f(t, y) = \frac{t^2 y^2}{1+t^2}$, $D = \{(t, y); 0 \leq t, -10 \leq y \leq 10\}$

2. Apply Euler's Method to approximate the solution of the given initial value problems using the indicated number of time steps. Compare the approximate solution with the given exact solution, and compute the actual error with the theoretical error

a) $y' = t - y$, $(0 \leq t \leq 4)$
 with the initial condition $y(0) = 1$,
 $N = 4$, $y(t) = 2e^{-t} + t - 1$

The Lipschitz constant is determined on $D = \{(t, y); 0 \leq t \leq 4, y \in \mathbb{R}\}$

b) $y' = y - t$, $(0 \leq t \leq 2)$
 with the initial condition $y(0) = 2$,
 $N = 4$, $y(t) = e^t + t + 1$

The Lipschitz constant is determined on $D = \{(t, y); 0 \leq t \leq 2, y \in \mathbb{R}\}$

HIGHER ORDER METHODS

2.1 HIGHER ORDER TAYLOR METHODS

In the general case using the Taylor expansion

$$y(t_{i+1}) = y(t_i) + hy'(t_i) + \frac{h^2}{2}y''(t_i) + \dots + \frac{h^{n+1}}{(n+1)!}y^{(n+1)}(\xi_i)$$

By differentiating the original Ordinary Differential Equation $y' = f(t, y)$ we can derive a higher order method it requires the function to be continuous and differentiable.

In the general case of Taylor of order n:

$$w_0 = \alpha$$

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + hT^n(t_i, w_i) \text{ for } i = 0, \dots, N-1$$

where

$$T^n(t_i, w_i) = f(t_i, w_i) + \frac{h}{2}f'(t_i, w_i) + \dots + \frac{h^{n-1}}{n!}f^{(n-1)}(t_i, w_i) \quad (11)$$

Example 11

Applying the general Taylor method to create methods of order two and four to the initial value problem

$$y' = y - t^2 + 1 \quad 0 \leq t \leq 2 \quad y(0) = 0.5$$

from this we have

$$f'(t, y(t)) = \frac{d}{dt}(y - t^2 + 1) = y' - 2t = y - t^2 + 1 - 2t$$

$$f''(t, y(t)) = y - t^2 - 2t - 1$$

$$f'''(t, y(t)) = y - t^2 - 2t - 1$$

From these derivatives we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 T^2(t_i, w_i) &= f(t_i, w_i) + \frac{h}{2} f'(t_i, w_i) \\
 &= w_i - t_i^2 + 1 + \frac{h}{2} (w_i - t_i^2 - 2t_i + 1) \\
 &= \left(1 + \frac{h}{2}\right) (w_i - t_i^2 - 2t_i + 1) - ht_i
 \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}
 T^4(t_i, w_i) &= f(t_i, w_i) + \frac{h}{2} f'(t_i, w_i) \\
 &\quad + \frac{h^2}{6} f''(t_i, w_i) + \frac{h^3}{24} f'''(t_i, w_i) \\
 &= \left(1 + \frac{h}{2} + \frac{h^2}{6} + \frac{h^3}{24}\right) (w_i - t_i^2) \\
 &\quad - \left(1 + \frac{h}{3} + \frac{h^2}{12}\right) ht_i \\
 &\quad + 1 + \frac{h}{2} - \frac{h^2}{6} - \frac{h^3}{24}
 \end{aligned}$$

From these equations we have, Taylor of order two

$$w_0 = 0.5$$

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + h \left[\left(1 + \frac{h}{2}\right) (w_i - t_i^2 - 2t_i + 1) - ht_i \right]$$

and Taylor of order 4

$$\begin{aligned}
 w_{i+1} &= w_i + h \left[\left(1 + \frac{h}{2} + \frac{h^2}{6} + \frac{h^3}{24}\right) (w_i - t_i^2) \right. \\
 &\quad \left. - \left(1 + \frac{h}{3} + \frac{h^2}{12}\right) ht_i + 1 + \frac{h}{2} - \frac{h^2}{6} - \frac{h^3}{24} \right]
 \end{aligned}$$

The local truncation error for the 2nd order method is

$$\tau_{i+1}(h) = \frac{y_{i+1} - y_i}{h} - T^2(t_i, y_i) = \frac{h^2}{6} f''(\xi_i, y(x_i))$$

where $\xi \in (t_i, t_{i+1})$.

In general if $y \in C^{n+1}[a, b]$

$$\tau_{i+1}(h) = \frac{h^n}{(n+1)!} f^{(n)}(\xi_i, y(\xi_i))$$

RUNGE-KUTTA METHOD

The Runge-Kutta method (RK) method is closely related to the Taylor series expansions but no differentiation of f is necessary.

All RK methods will be written in the form

$$w_{n+1} = w_n + hF(t, w, h; f) \quad n \geq 0 \quad (12)$$

We define the truncation error for (12) by

$$T_n(y) = y(t_{n+1}) - y(t_n) - hF(t_n, y(t_n), h; f)$$

and define $\tau_n(y)$

$$T_n = h\tau_n(y)$$

Rearranging we get

$$y(t_{n+1}) = y(t_n) - hF(t_n, y(t_n), h; f) + h\tau_n(y)$$

Theorem 3.0.1. Suppose $f(t, y)$ and all its partial derivatives of order less than or equal to $n+1$ are continuous on $D = \{(t, y) | a \leq t \leq b, c \leq y \leq d\}$ and let $(t_0, y_0) \in D$ for every $(t, y) \in D$, $\exists \xi \in (t, t_0)$ and $\mu \in (y, y_0)$ with

$$f(t, y) = P_n(t, y) + R_n(t, y)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} P_n(t, y) = & f(t_0, y_0) + \left[(t - t_0) \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(t_0, y_0) + (y - y_0) \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(t_0, y_0) \right] \\ & + \left[\frac{(t - t_0)^2}{2} \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial t^2}(t_0, y_0) + (y - y_0)(t - t_0) \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial t}(t_0, y_0) \right. \\ & \left. + \frac{(y - y_0)^2}{2} \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2}(t_0, y_0) \right] \\ & + \dots + \\ & + \left[\frac{1}{n!} \sum_{j=0}^n \binom{n}{j} (t - t_0)^{n-j} (y - y_0)^j \frac{\partial^n f}{\partial y^j \partial t^{n-j}}(t_0, y_0) \right] \end{aligned}$$

and

$$R_n(t, y) = \left[\frac{1}{(n+1)!} \sum_{j=0}^{n+1} \binom{n+1}{j} (t-t_0)^{n+1-j} (y-y_0)^j \frac{\partial^{n+1} f}{\partial y^j \partial t^{n+1-j}}(\xi, \mu) \right]$$

3.1 DERIVATION OF SECOND ORDER RUNGE KUTTA

Consider the explicit one-step method

$$\frac{w_{i+1} - w_i}{h} = F(f, t_i, w_i, h) \quad (13)$$

with

$$F(f, t, y, h) = a_1 f(t, y) + a_2 f(t + \alpha_2, y + \beta_1) \quad (14)$$

Deriving the second order Runge-Kutta method by using the theorem to determine values for values a_1, α_1 and β_1 with the property that $a_1 f(t + \alpha_1, y + \beta_1)$ approximates the second order Taylor

$$f(t, y) + \frac{h}{2} f'(t, y)$$

with error no greater than $O(h^2)$, the local truncation error for the Taylor method of order two.

Using

$$f'(t, y) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(y, t) + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(t, y) \cdot y'(t)$$

the second order Taylor can be re-written as

$$f(t, y) + \frac{h}{2} \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(y, t) + \frac{h}{2} \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(t, y) \cdot f(t, y) \quad (15)$$

Expanding $a_1 f(t + \alpha_1, y + \beta_1)$ in its Taylor poly of degree one about (t, y) gives

$$a_1 f(t + \alpha_1, y + \beta_1) = a_1 f(t, y) + a_1 \alpha_1 \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(t, y) + a_1 \beta_1 \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} + a_1 R_1(t + \alpha_1, y + \beta_1) \quad (16)$$

where

$$R_1(t + \alpha_1, y + \beta_1) = \frac{\alpha_1^2}{2} \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial t^2}(\xi, \mu) + \alpha_1 \beta_1 \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial t \partial y}(\xi, \mu) + \frac{\beta_1^2}{2} \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2}(\xi, \mu)$$

for some $\xi \in [t, t + \alpha_1]$ and $\mu \in [y, y + \beta_1]$.

Matching the coefficients and its derivatives in eqns (15) and (16) gives the equations

$$f(t, y) : a_1 = 1$$

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(t, y) : a_1 \alpha_1 = \frac{h}{2}$$

and

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(t, y) : a_1 \beta_1 = \frac{h}{2} f(t, y)$$

The parameters a_1, α_1 and β_1 are uniquely determined to be, $a_1 = 1$, $\alpha_1 = \frac{h}{2}$ and $\beta_1 = \frac{h}{2} f(t, y)$ so

$$T^2(t, y) = f\left(t + \frac{h}{2}, y + \frac{h}{2} f(t, y)\right) - R_1\left(t + \frac{h}{2}, y + \frac{h}{2} f(t, y)\right)$$

and from

$$\begin{aligned} R_1\left(t + \frac{h}{2}, y + \frac{h}{2} f(t, y)\right) = & \frac{h^2}{2} \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial t^2}\left(t + \frac{h}{2}, y + \frac{h}{2} f(t, y)\right) \\ & + \frac{h^2}{4} f(t, y) \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial t \partial y}\left(t + \frac{h}{2}, y + \frac{h}{2} f(t, y)\right) \\ & + \frac{h^2}{2} f(t, y)^2 \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2}\left(t + \frac{h}{2}, y + \frac{h}{2} f(t, y)\right) \end{aligned}$$

If all the second-order partial derivatives are bounded then

$$R_1\left(t + \frac{h}{2}, y + \frac{h}{2} f(t, y)\right) \sim O(h^2)$$

3.2 RUNGE KUTTA SECOND ORDER: MIDPOINT METHOD

$$w_0 = \alpha$$

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + hf\left(t_i + \frac{h}{2}, y_i + \frac{h}{2} f(t_i, w_i)\right)$$

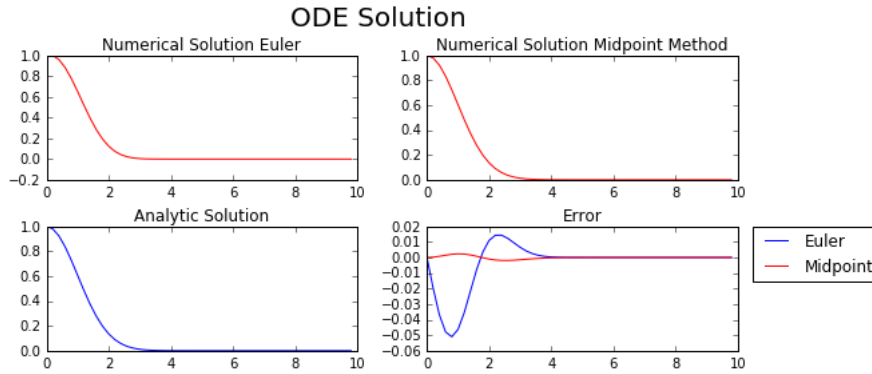


Figure 3.2.1: Python output: Illustrating upper bound $y' = -xy$ with the initial condition $y(0) = 1$

for each $i = 0, 1, \dots, N-1$

3.3 RUNGE KUTTA THIRD ORDER: MODIFIED EULER METHOD

$$w_0 = \alpha$$

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + \frac{h}{2}(f(t_i, w_i)) + f(t_{i+1}, w_i + hf(t_i, w_i))$$

for each $i = 0, 1, \dots, N-1$

3.4 RUNGE KUTTA FORTH ORDER

$$w_0 = \alpha$$

$$k_1 = hf(t_i, w_i)$$

$$k_2 = hf(t_i + \frac{h}{2}, w_i + \frac{1}{2}k_1)$$

$$k_3 = hf(t_i + \frac{h}{2}, w_i + \frac{1}{2}k_2)$$

$$k_4 = hf(t_{i+1}, w_i + k_3)$$

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + \frac{1}{6}(k_1 + 2k_2 + 2k_3 + k_4)$$

Example 12

Example Midpoint method

$$y' = y - t^2 + 1 \quad 0 \leq t \leq 2 \quad y(0) = 0.5$$

$$N = 10 \quad t_i = 0.2i \quad h = 0.2$$

$$w_0 = 0.5$$

$$\begin{aligned} w_{i+1} &= w_i + 0.2f(t_i + \frac{0.2}{2}, w_i + \frac{0.2}{2}f(t_i, w_i)) \\ &= w_i + 0.2f(t_i + 0.1, w_i + 0.1(w_i - t_i^2 + 1)) \\ &= w_i + 0.2(w_i + 0.1(w_i - t_i^2 + 1) - (t_i + 0.1)^2 + 1) \end{aligned}$$

Example 13

Example Runge Kutta forth order method

$$y' = y - t^2 + 1 \quad 0 \leq t \leq 2 \quad y(0) = 0.5$$

$$N = 10 \quad t_i = 0.2i \quad h = 0.2$$

$$w_0 = 0.5$$

$$\begin{aligned}
k_1 &= h(w_i - t_i^2 + 1) \\
k_2 &= h(w_i + \frac{1}{2}k_1 - (t_i + \frac{h}{2})^2 + 1) \\
k_3 &= h(w_i + \frac{1}{2}k_2 - (t_i + \frac{h}{2})^2 + 1) \\
k_4 &= h(w_i + \frac{1}{2}k_3 - (t_i + h)^2 + 1) \\
w_{i+1} &= w_i + \frac{1}{6}(k_1 + 2k_2 + 2k_3 + k_4)
\end{aligned}$$

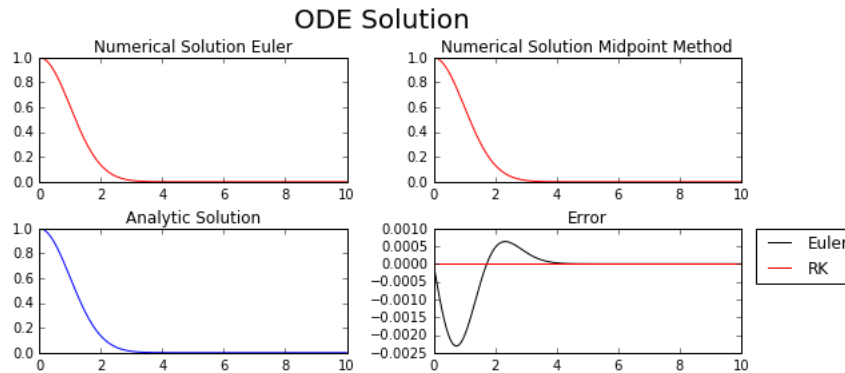


Figure 3.4.1: Python output: Illustrating upper bound $y' = -xy$ with the initial condition $y(0) = 1$

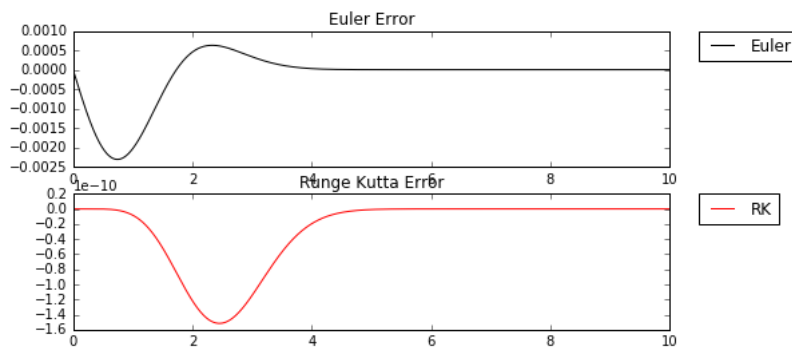


Figure 3.4.2: Python output: Illustrating upper bound $y' = -xy$ with the initial condition $y(0) = 1$

3.5 CONVERGENCE ANALYSIS

In order to obtain convergence of the general Runge Kutta we need to have the truncation $\tau_n(y) \rightarrow 0$ as $h \rightarrow 0$. Since

$$\tau(y) = \frac{y(t_{n+1}) - y(t_n)}{h} - F(t_n, y(t_n), h; f)$$

we require

$$F(x, y, h; f) \rightarrow y'(x) = f(x, y(x))$$

More precisely define

$$\delta(h) = \max_{a \leq t \leq b; -\infty < y < \infty} |f(t, y) - F(t, y, h; f)|$$

and assume

$$\delta(h) \rightarrow 0 \quad \text{as } h \rightarrow 0 \quad (17)$$

This is called the consistency condition for the RK method.

We will also need a Lipschitz Condition on F :

$$|F(t, y, h; f) - F(t, z, h; f)| \leq |y - z| \quad (18)$$

for all $a \leq t \leq b$ and $-\infty < y, z < \infty$ and small $h > 0$.

Example 14

Looking at the midpoint method

$$\begin{aligned} |F(t, w, h; f) - F(t, z, h; f)| &= \left| f\left(t + \frac{h}{2}, w + \frac{h}{2}f(t, w)\right) \right. \\ &\quad \left. - f\left(t + \frac{h}{2}, z + \frac{h}{2}f(t, z)\right) \right| \\ &\leq K \left| w - z + \frac{h}{2}[f(t, w) - f(t, z)] \right| \\ &\leq K \left(1 + \frac{h}{2}K\right) |w - z| \end{aligned}$$

Theorem 3.5.1. Assume that the Runge Kutta method satisfies the Lipschitz Condition. Then for the initial value problems

$$y' = f(x, y)$$

$$y(x_0) = Y_0$$

The numerical solution $\{w_n\}$ satisfies

$$\max_{a \leq x \leq b} |y(x_n) - w_n| \leq e^{(b-a)L} |Y_0 - w_0| + \left[\frac{e^{(b-a)L} - 1}{L} \right] \tau(h)$$

where

$$\tau(h) = \max_{a \leq x \leq b} |\tau_n(Y)|$$

If the consistency condition

$$\delta(h) \rightarrow 0 \quad \text{as } h \rightarrow 0$$

where

$$\delta(h) = \max_{a \leq x \leq b} |f(x, y) - F(x, y, h; f)|$$

Proof. Subtracting

$$w_{n+1} = w_n + hF(t_n, w_n, h; f)$$

and

$$y(t_{n+1}) = y(t_n) + hF(t_n, y(t_n), h; f) + h\tau_n(h)$$

we obtain

$$e_{n+1} = e_n + h[F(t_n, w_n, h; f) - F(t_n, y(t_n), h; f)] + h\tau_n(h)$$

in which $e_n = y(t_n) - w_n$. Apply the Lipschitz Condition L and the truncation error we obtain

$$|e_{n+1}| \leq (1 + hL)|e_n| + h\tau_n(h)$$

This nicely leads to the result.

In most cases it is known by direct computation that $\tau(Y) \rightarrow 0$ as $h \rightarrow 0$ and in that case convergence of $\{w_n\}$ and $y(t_n)$ is immediately proved.

But all we need to know is that (17) is satisfied. To see this we write

$$\begin{aligned} h\tau_n &= Y(t_{n+1}) - Y(t_n) - hF(t_n, Y(t_n), h; f) \\ &= hY'(t_n) + \frac{h^2}{2}Y''(\xi_n) - hF(t_n, Y(t_n), h; f) \\ h|\tau_n| &\leq h\delta(h) + \frac{h^2}{2}|Y''| \\ |\tau_n| &\leq \delta(h) + \frac{h}{2}|Y''| \end{aligned}$$

Thus $\tau(h) \rightarrow 0$ as $h \rightarrow 0$ □

From this we have

Corollary 3.5.2. *If the RK method has a truncation error $\tau(Y) = O(h^{m+1})$ then the rate of convergence of $\{w_n\}$ to $Y(t)$ is $O(h^m)$.*

An interesting question is since Runge-Kutta method is 4th order but requires 4 steps and Euler only required 3 is it more beneficial to use a smaller h than a higher order method?

But this does lead us to the question of how do we define our h to maximize the solution we have.

An ideal difference-equation method

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + h\phi(t_i, w_i, h) \quad i = 0, \dots, n-1$$

for approximating the solution $y(t)$ to the Initial Value Problem $y' = f(t, y)$ would have the property that given a tolerance $\varepsilon > 0$ the minimal number of mesh points would be used to ensure that the global error $|y(t_i) - w_i|$ would not exceed ε for any $i = 0, \dots, N$.

We do this by finding an appropriate choice of mesh points. Although we cannot generally determine the global error of a method there is a close relation between local truncation and global error. By using

methods of differing order we can predict the local truncation error and using this prediction choose a step size that will keep global error in check.

Suppose we have two techniques

1. An n th order Taylor method of the form

$$y(t_{i+1}) = y(t_i) + h\phi(t_i, y(t_i), h_i) + O(h^{n+1})$$

producing approximations

$$w_0 = \alpha$$

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + h\phi(t_i, w_i, h_i)$$

with local truncation $\tau_{i+1} = O(h^n)$.

2. An $(n+1)$ st order Taylor of the form

$$y(t_{i+1}) = y(t_i) + h\psi(t_i, y(t_i), h_i) + O(h^{n+2})$$

producing approximations

$$v_0 = \alpha$$

$$v_{i+1} = v_i + h\psi(t_i, v_i, h_i)$$

with local truncation $v_{i+1} = O(h^{n+1})$.

We first make the assumption that $w_i \approx y(t_i) \approx v_i$ and choose a fixed step size to generate w_{i+1} and v_{i+1} to approximate $y(t_{i+1})$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \tau_{i+1} &= \frac{y(t_{i+1}) - y(t_i)}{h} - \phi(t_i, y(t_i), h) \\ &= \frac{y(t_{i+1}) - w_i}{h} - \phi(t_i, w_i, h) \\ &= \frac{y(t_{i+1}) - (w_i + h\phi(t_i, w_i, h))}{h} \\ &= \frac{y(t_{i+1}) - w_{i+1}}{h} \end{aligned}$$

Similarly

$$v_{i+1} = \frac{y(t_{i+1}) - v_{i+1}}{h}$$

As a consequence

$$\begin{aligned} \tau_{i+1} &= \frac{y(t_{i+1}) - w_{i+1}}{h} \\ &= \frac{(y(t_{i+1}) - v_{i+1}) + (v_{i+1} - w_{i+1})}{h} \\ &= v_{i+1}(h) + \frac{(v_{i+1} - w_{i+1})}{h} \end{aligned}$$

But $\tau_{i+1}(h)$ is $O(h^n)$ and $v_{i+1}(h)$ is $O(h^{n+1})$ so the significant factor of $\tau_{i+1}(h)$ must come from $\frac{(v_{i+1}-w_{i+1})}{h}$. This gives us an easily computed approximation of $O(h^n)$ method.

$$\tau_{i+1} \approx \frac{(v_{i+1} - w_{i+1})}{h}$$

The object is not to estimate the local truncation error but to adjust step size to keep it within a specified bound. To do this we assume that since $\tau_{i+1}(h)$ is $O(h^n)$ a number K independent of h exists with

$$\tau_{i+1}(h) \approx Kh^n$$

Then the local truncation error produced by applying the n th order method with a new step size qh can be estimated using the original approximations w_{i+1} and v_{i+1}

$$\tau_{i+1}(qh) \approx K(qh)^n \approx q^n \tau_{i+1}(h) \approx \frac{q^n}{h} (v_{i+1} - w_{i+1})$$

to bound $\tau_{i+1}(qh)$ by ε we choose q such that

$$\frac{q^n}{h} |v_{i+1} - w_{i+1}| \approx \tau_{i+1}(qh) \leq \varepsilon$$

which leads to

$$q \leq \left(\frac{\varepsilon h}{|v_{i+1} - w_{i+1}|} \right)^{\frac{1}{n}}$$

which can be used to control the error.

3.6 PROBLEM SHEET 2

1. Apply the Taylor method to approximate the solution of initial value problem

$$y' = ty + ty^2, \quad (0 \leq t \leq 2), \quad y(0) = \frac{1}{2}$$

using $N = 4$ steps

2. Apply the Midpoint Method to approximate the solution of the given initial value problems using the indicated number of time steps. Compare the approximate solution with the given exact solution

a) $y' = t - y, \quad (0 \leq t \leq 4)$
 with the initial condition $y(0) = 1$,
 $N = 4, y(t) = 2e^{-t} + t - 1$

b) $y' = y - t, \quad (0 \leq t \leq 2)$
 with the initial condition $y(0) = 2$,
 $N = 4, y(t) = e^t + t + 1$

3. Apply the 4th Order Runge Kutta Method to approximate the solution of the given initial value problems using the indicated number of time steps. Compare the approximate solution with the given exact solution

a) $y' = t - y, \quad (0 \leq t \leq 4)$
 with the initial condition $y(0) = 1$,
 $N = 4, y(t) = 2e^{-t} + t - 1$

b) $y' = y - t, \quad (0 \leq t \leq 2)$
 with the initial condition $y(0) = 2$,
 $N = 4, y(t) = e^t + t + 1$

4. Derive the difference equation for the Midpoint Runge Kutta method

$$w_{n+1} = w_n + k_2$$

$$k_1 = hf(t_n, w_n)$$

$$k_2 = hf(t_n + \frac{1}{2}h, w_n + \frac{1}{2}k_1)$$

for solving the ordinary differential equation

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = f(t, y)$$

$$y(t_0) = y_0$$

by using a formula of the form

$$w_{n+1} = w_n + ak_1 + bk_2$$

where k_1 is defined as above,

$$k_2 = hf(t_n + \alpha h, w_n + \beta k_1)$$

and a , b , α and β are constants are determined. Prove that $a + b = 1$ and $b\alpha = b\beta = \frac{1}{2}$ and choose appropriate values to give the Midpoint Runge Kutta method.

MULTI-STEP METHODS

Methods using the approximation at more than one previous point to determine the approx at the next point are called multi-step methods.

Definition An m-step multi-step method for solving the Initial Value Problem

$$y' = f(t, y) \quad a \leq t \leq b \quad y(a) = \alpha$$

is on whose difference equation for finding the approximation w_{i+1} at the mesh points t_{i+1} can be represented by the following equation, when m is an integer greater than 1,

$$w_{i+1} = a_{m-1}w_i + a_{m-2}w_{i-1} + \dots + a_0w_{i+1-m}$$

$$+ h[b_m f(t_{i+1}, w_{i+1}) + b_{m-1}f(t_i, w_i) + \dots + b_0f(t_{i+1-m}, w_{i+1-m})] \quad (19)$$

for $i = m - 1, m, \dots, N - 1$ where $h = \frac{b-a}{N}$ the a_0, a_1, \dots, a_{m-1} and b_0, b_1, \dots, b_m are constants, and the starting values

$$w_0 = \alpha, \quad w_1 = \alpha_1, \quad w_2 = \alpha_2, \quad \dots \quad w_{m-1} = \alpha_{m-1}$$

are specified.

When $b_m = 0$ the method is called **explicit** or open since (19) then gives w_{i+1} explicitly in terms of previously determined approximations.

When $b_m \neq 0$ the method is called **implicit** or closed since w_{i+1} occurs on both sides of (19). \diamond

Example 15

Fourth order Adams-Bashforth

$$w_0 = \alpha \quad w_1 = \alpha_1 \quad w_2 = \alpha_2 \quad w_3 = \alpha_3$$

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + \frac{h}{24} [55f(t_i, w_i) - 59f(t_{i-1}, w_{i-1}) + 37f(t_{i-2}, w_{i-2}) - 9f(t_{i-3}, w_{i-3})]$$

For each $i = 3, 4, \dots, N-1$ define an explicit four step method known as the fourth order Adams-Bashforth technique.

The equation

$$w_0 = \alpha \quad w_1 = \alpha_1 \quad w_2 = \alpha_2$$

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + \frac{h}{24} [9f(t_{i+1}, w_{i+1}) + 19f(t_i, w_i) - 5f(t_{i-1}, w_{i-1}) + f(t_{i-2}, w_{i-2})]$$

For each $i = 2, 4, \dots, N-1$ define an implicit three step method known as the fourth order Adams-Moulton technique.

For the previous methods we need to generate α_1, α_2 and α_3 by using a one step method.

4.1 DERIVATION OF A EXPLICIT MULTISTEP METHOD

4.1.1 General Derivation of a explicit method Adams-Bashforth

$$y(t_{i+1}) - y(t_i) = \int_{t_i}^{t_{i+1}} y'(t) dt = \int_{t_i}^{t_{i+1}} f(t, y(t)) dt$$

Consequently

$$y(t_{i+1}) = y(t_i) + \int_{t_i}^{t_{i+1}} f(t, y(t)) dt$$

Since we cannot integrate $f(t, y(t))$ without knowing $y(t)$ the solution to the problem we instead integrate an interpolating poly. $P(t)$ to $f(t, y(t))$ that is determined by some of the previous obtained data points $(t_0, w_0), (t_1, w_1), \dots, (t_i, w_i)$. When we assume in addition that $y(t_i) \approx w_i$

$$y(t_{i+1}) \approx w_i + \int_{t_i}^{t_{i+1}} P(t) dt$$

We use Newton back-substitution to derive an Adams-Bashforth explicit m-step technique, we form the backward difference poly $P_{m-1}(t)$ through $(t_i, f(t_i)), (t_{i-1}, f(t_{i-1})), \dots, (t_{i+1-m}, f(t_{i+1-m}))$

$$f(t, y(t)) = P_{m-1}(t) + f^m(\xi, y(\xi)) \frac{(t - t_i) \dots (t - t_{i+1-m})}{m!} \quad (20)$$

$$P_{m-1}(t) = \sum_{j=1}^m L_{m-1,j}(t) \nabla^j f(t_{i+1-j}, y(t_{i+1-j})) \quad (21)$$

where

$$\nabla f(t_i, y(t_i)) = f(t_i, y(t_i)) - f(t_{i-1}, y(t_{i-1})),$$

$$\nabla^2 f(t_i, y(t_i)) = \nabla f(t_i, y(t_i)) - \nabla f(t_{i-1}, y(t_{i-1})) = f(t_i, y(t_i)) - 2f(t_{i-1}, y(t_{i-1})) + f(t_{i-2}, y(t_{i-2})).$$

Derivation of a explicit two-step method Adams Bashforth

To derive two step Adams-Bashforth technique

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{t_i}^{t_{i+1}} f(t, y) dt &= \int_{t_i}^{t_{i+1}} [f(t_i, y(t_i)) + \frac{(t - t_i)}{h} \nabla f(t_i, y(t_i)) + \text{error}] dt \\ y_{i+1} - y_i &= [t f(t_i, y(t_i)) + \frac{t(\frac{t}{2} - t_i)}{h} \nabla f(t_i, y(t_i))]_{t_i}^{t_{i+1}} + \text{Error} \\ y_{i+1} &= y(t_i) + (t_{i+1} - t_i) f(t_i, y(t_i)) \\ &\quad + \frac{\frac{t_{i+1}^2}{2} - t_{i+1} t_i + t_i^2 + \frac{t_i^2}{2} - t_i^2}{h} \nabla(f(t_i, y(t_i))) + \text{Error} \\ &= y(t_i) + h f(t_i, y(t_i)) \\ &\quad + \frac{(t_{i+1} - t_i)^2}{2h} (f(t_i, y(t_i)) - f(t_{i-1}, y(t_{i-1}))) + \text{Error} \\ &= y(t_i) + h f(t_i, y(t_i)) \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{2} (f(t_i, y(t_i)) - f(t_{i-1}, y(t_{i-1}))) + \text{Error} \\ &= y(t_i) + \frac{h}{2} [3f(t_i, y(t_i)) - f(t_{i-1}, y(t_{i-1})) + \text{Error}] \end{aligned}$$

The two step Adams-Bashforth is $w_0 = \alpha_0$ and $w_1 = \alpha_1$ with

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + \frac{h}{2} [3w_i - w_{i-1}] \quad \text{for } i = 1, \dots, N-1$$

The local truncation error is

$$\tau_{i+1}(h) = \frac{y(t_i + 1) - y(t_i)}{h} - \frac{1}{2} [3f(t_i, y(t_i)) - f(t_{i-1}, y(t_{i-1}))]$$

$$\tau_{i+1}(h) = \frac{\text{Error}}{h}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Error} &= \int_{t_i}^{t_{i+1}} \frac{(t - t_i)(t - t_{i-1})}{(t_{i+1} - t_i)(t_{i+1} - t_{i-1})} h^3 f^2(\mu_i, y(\mu_i)) dt \\ &= \frac{5}{12} h^3 f^2(\mu_i, y(\mu_i)) \end{aligned}$$

$$\tau_{i+1}(h) = \frac{\frac{5}{12} h^3 f^2(\mu_i, y(\mu_i))}{h}$$

The local truncation error for the two step Adams-Bashforth methods is of order 2

$$\tau_{i+1}(h) = O(h^2)$$

General Derivation of a explicit method Adams-Bashforth (cont.)

Definition The Lagrange polynomial $L_{m-1,j}(t)$ has a degree of $m-1$ and is associated with the interpolation point t_j in the sense

$$L_{m-1,j}(t) = \begin{cases} 1 & i = j \\ 0 & i \neq j \end{cases}$$

$$L_{m-1,j}(t) = \frac{(t-t_0)\dots(t-t_{m-1})}{(t_j-t_0)\dots(t_j-t_{m-1})} = \prod_{k=0, k \neq j}^{m-1} \frac{t-t_k}{t_j-t_k} \quad (22)$$

Introducing the variable $t = t_k + sh$ with $dt = hds$ into $L_{m-1}(t)$

$$L_{m-1,j}(t) = \prod_{k=0, k \neq j}^{m-1} \frac{t_i + sh - t_k}{(i+1)h} = (-1)^{(m-1)} \binom{-s}{m-1} \quad (23)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{t_i}^{t_{i+1}} f(t, y(t)) dt &= \int_{t_i}^{t_{i+1}} \sum_{k=0}^{m-1} \binom{-s}{k} \nabla^k f(t_i, y(t_i)) dt \\ &\quad + \int_{t_i}^{t_{i+1}} f^m(\xi, y(\xi)) \frac{(t-t_i)\dots(t-t_{i+1-m})}{m!} dt \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{m-1} \nabla^k f(t_i, y(t_i)) h (-1)^k \int_0^1 \binom{-s}{k} ds \\ &\quad + \frac{h^{m+1}}{m!} \int_0^1 s(s+1)\dots(s+m-1) f^m(\xi, y(\xi)) ds \end{aligned}$$

The integrals $(-1)^k \int_0^1 \binom{-s}{k} ds$ for various values of k are computed as such,

Example 16

Example $k = 2$

$$\begin{aligned} (-1)^2 \int_0^1 \binom{-s}{2} ds &= \int_0^1 \frac{-s(-s-1)}{1.2} ds \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \int_0^1 s^2 + s ds \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[\frac{s^3}{3} + \frac{s^2}{2} \right]_0^1 = \frac{5}{12} \end{aligned}$$

| k | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | ... |
|------------------------------------|---|---------------|----------------|---------------|---------|---------|
| $(-1)^k \int_0^1 \binom{-s}{k} ds$ | 1 | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{5}{12}$ | $\frac{3}{8}$ | \cdot | \cdot |

Table 1: Table of Adams-Bashforth coefficients

As a consequence

$$\int_{t_i}^{t_{i+1}} f(t, y(t)) dt = h \left[f(t_i, y(t_i)) + \frac{1}{2} \nabla f(t_i, y(t_i)) + \frac{5}{12} \nabla^2 f(t_i, y(t_i)) + \dots \right] \\ + \frac{h^{m+1}}{m!} \int_0^1 s(s+1) \dots (s+m-1) f^m(\xi, y(\xi)) ds$$

Since $s(s+1) \dots (s+m-1)$ does not change sign on $[0, 1]$ it can be stated that for some μ_i where $t_{i+1-m} < \mu_i < t_{i+1}$ the error term becomes

$$\frac{h^{m+1}}{m!} \int_0^1 s(s+1) \dots (s+m-1) f^m(\xi, y(\xi)) ds \\ \frac{h^{m+1}}{m!} f^m(\mu, y(\mu)) \int_0^1 s(s+1) \dots (s+m-1) ds$$

Since $y(t_{i+1}) - y(t_i) = \int_{t_i}^{t_{i+1}} f(s, y(s)) ds$ this can be written as

$$y(t_{i+1}) = y(t_i) + h \left[f(t_i, y(t_i)) + \frac{1}{2} \nabla f(t_i, y(t_i)) + \frac{5}{12} \nabla^2 f(t_i, y(t_i)) + \dots \right]$$

Example 17

To derive the two step Adams-Bashforth method

$$\begin{aligned} y(t_{i+1}) &\approx y(t_i) + h[f(t_i, y(t_i)) + \frac{1}{2}(\nabla f(t_i, y(t_i)))] \\ &= y(t_i) + h[f(t_i, y(t_i)) + \frac{1}{2}(f(t_i, y(t_i)) - f(t_{i-1}, y(t_{i-1})))] \\ &= y(t_i) + \frac{h}{2}[3f(t_i, y(t_i)) - f(t_{i-1}, y(t_{i-1}))] \end{aligned}$$

The two step Adams-Bashforth is $w_0 = \alpha_0$ and $w_1 = \alpha_1$ with

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + \frac{h}{2}[3w_i - w_{i-1}] \quad \text{for } i = 1, \dots, N-1$$

Definition If $y(t)$ is a solution of the Initial Value Problem

$$y' = f(t, y), \quad a \leq t \leq b \quad y(a) = \alpha$$

and

$$w_{i+1} = a_{m-1}w_i + a_{m-2}w_{i-1} + \dots + a_0w_{i+1-m}$$

$$+h[b_m f(t_{i+1}, w_{i+1}) + b_{m-1} f(t_i, w_i) + \dots + b_0 f(t_{i+1-m}, w_{i+1-m})]$$

is the $(i+1)$ th step in a multi-step method, the local truncation error at this step is

$$\tau_{i+1}(h) = \frac{y(t_{i+1}) - a_{m-1}y(t_i) - \dots - a_0y(t_{i+1-m})}{h}$$

$$- [b_m f(t_{i+1}, y(t_{i+1})) + b_{m-1} f(t_i, y(t_i)) + \dots + b_0 f(t_{i+1-m}, y(t_{i+1-m}))]$$

for each $i = m - 1, \dots, N - 1$.

Example 18

Truncation error for the two step Adams-Bashforth method is

$$h^3 f^2(\mu_i, y(\mu_i)) (-1)^2 \int_0^1 \begin{pmatrix} -s \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} ds = \frac{5h^3}{12} f^2(\mu_i, y(\mu_i))$$

using the fact that $f^2(\mu_i, y(\mu_i)) = y^3(\mu_i)$

$$\begin{aligned} \tau_{i+1}(h) &= \frac{y(t_{i+1}) - y(t_i)}{h} - \frac{1}{2} [3f(t_i, y(t_i)) - f(t_{i-1}, y(t_{i-1}))] \\ &= \frac{1}{h} \left[\frac{5h^3}{12} f^2(\mu_i, y(\mu_i)) \right] = \frac{5}{12} h^2 y^3(\mu_i) \end{aligned}$$

4.1.2 Adams-Bashforth three step method

$$w_0 = \alpha \quad w_1 = \alpha_1 \quad w_2 = \alpha_2$$

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + \frac{h}{12} [23f(t_i, w_i) - 16f(t_{i-1}, w_{i-1}) + 5f(t_{i-2}, w_{i-2})]$$

where $i=2,3,\dots,N-1$

The local truncation error is of order 3

$$\tau_{i+1}(h) = \frac{3}{8} h^3 y^4(\mu_i)$$

$$\mu_i \in (t_{i-2}, t_{i+1})$$

4.1.3 Adams-Bashforth four step method

$$w_0 = \alpha \quad w_1 = \alpha_1 \quad w_2 = \alpha_2 \quad w_3 = \alpha_3$$

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + \frac{h}{24} [55f(t_i, w_i) - 59f(t_{i-1}, w_{i-1}) + 37f(t_{i-2}, w_{i-2}) - 9f(t_{i-3}, w_{i-3})]$$

where $i=3,\dots,N-1$

The local truncation error is of order 4

$$\tau_{i+1}(h) = \frac{251}{720}h^4 y^{(5)}(\mu_i)$$

$$\mu_i \in (t_{i-3}, t_{i+1})$$

Example 19

$$y' = y - t^2 + 1 \quad 0 \leq t \leq 2 \quad y(0) = 0.5$$

Adams-Bashforth two step $w_0 = \alpha_0$ and $w_1 = \alpha_1$ with

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + \frac{h}{2}[3f(t_i, w_i) - f(t_{i-1}, w_{i-1})] \quad \text{for } i = 1, \dots, N-1$$

$$\text{truncation error } \tau_{i+1}(h) = \frac{5}{12}h^2 y^{(3)}(\mu_i) \quad \mu_i \in (t_{i-1}, t_{i+1}).$$

1. Calculate α_0 and α_1

From the initial condition we have $w_0 = 0.5$

To calculate w_1 we use the modified Euler method.

$$\begin{aligned} w_0 &= \alpha \\ w_{i+1} &= w_i + \frac{h}{2}[f(t_i, w_i) + f(t_{i+1}, w_i + hf(t_i, w_i))] \end{aligned}$$

We only need this to calculate w_1

$$\begin{aligned} w_0 &= 0.5 \\ w_1 &= w_0 + \frac{h}{2}[f(t_0, w_0) + f(t_1, w_0 + hf(t_0, w_0))] \\ w_1 &= w_0 + \frac{0.2}{2}[w_0 - t_0^2 + 1 + w_0 + h(w_0 - t_0^2 + 1) - t_1^2 + 1] \\ &= 0.5 + \frac{0.2}{2}[0.5 - 0 + 1 + 0.5 + 0.2(1.5) - (0.2)^2 + 1] \\ &= 0.826 \end{aligned}$$

we now have $\alpha_1 = w_1 = 0.826$

2. Calculate w_i for $i = 2, \dots, N$

$$\begin{aligned} w_2 &= w_1 + \frac{h}{2}[3f(t_1, w_1) - f(t_0, w_0)] \\ &= w_1 + \frac{h}{2}[3(w_1 - t_1^2 + 1) - (w_0 - t_0^2 + 1)] \\ &= 0.826 + \frac{0.2}{2}[3(0.826 - 0.2^2 + 1) - (0.5 - 0^2 + 1)] \\ &= 0.8858 \end{aligned}$$

·
·
·

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + \frac{0.2}{2}[3(w_i - t_i^2 + 1) - (w_{i-1} - t_{i-1}^2 + 1)]$$

this method can be generalised for all Adams-Bashforth.

4.2 DERIVATION OF THE IMPLICIT MULTI-STEP METHOD

4.2.0.1 Derivation of an implicit one-step method Adams Moulton

To derive one step Adams-Moulton technique

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{t_i}^{t_{i+1}} f(t, y) dt &= \int_{t_i}^{t_{i+1}} [f(t_{i+1}, y(t_{i+1})) + \frac{(t - t_{i+1})}{h} \nabla f(t_{i+1}, y(t_{i+1})) + \text{error}] dt \\ y_{i+1} - y_i &= [t f(t_{i+1}, y(t_{i+1})) \\ &\quad + \frac{t(\frac{t}{2} - t_{i+1})}{h} \nabla f(t_{i+1}, y(t_{i+1}))]_{t_i}^{t_{i+1}} + \text{Error} \\ y_{i+1} &= y(t_i) + (t_{i+1} - t_i) f(t_{i+1}, y(t_{i+1})) \\ &\quad + \frac{\frac{t_{i+1}^2}{2} - t_{i+1}^2 + t_i t_{i+1} - \frac{t_i^2}{2}}{h} \nabla(f(t_{i+1}, y(t_{i+1}))) \\ &\quad + \text{Error} \\ &= y(t_i) + h f(t_{i+1}, y(t_{i+1})) \\ &\quad + \frac{-(t_{i+1} - t_i)^2}{2h} (f(t_{i+1}, y(t_{i+1})) - f(t_i, y(t_i))) \\ &\quad + \text{Error} \\ &= y(t_i) + h f(t_{i+1}, y(t_{i+1})) \\ &\quad - \frac{h}{2} (f(t_{i+1}, y(t_{i+1})) - f(t_i, y(t_i))) + \text{Error} \\ &= y(t_i) + \frac{h}{2} [f(t_{i+1}, y(t_{i+1})) + f(t_i, y(t_i))] + \text{Error} \end{aligned}$$

The two step Adams-Moulton is $w_0 = \alpha_0$ and $w_1 = \alpha_1$ with

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + \frac{h}{2}[w_{i+1} + w_i] \quad \text{for } i = 0, \dots, N-1$$

The local truncation error is

$$\tau_{i+1}(h) = \frac{y(t_{i+1}) - y(t_i)}{h} - \frac{1}{2}[f(t_{i+1}, y(t_{i+1})) + f(t_i, y(t_i))]$$

$$\tau_{i+1}(h) = \frac{\text{Error}}{h}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Error} &= \int_{t_i}^{t_{i+1}} \frac{(t - t_{i+1})(t - t_i)}{(t_i - t_{i+1})(t_i - t_{i-1})} h^3 f^2(\mu_i, y(\mu_i)) dt \\ &= \frac{1}{12} h^3 f^2(\mu_i, y(\mu_i)) \end{aligned}$$

$$\tau_{i+1}(h) = \frac{\frac{1}{12} h^3 f^2(\mu_i, y(\mu_i))}{h}$$

The local truncation error for the one step Adams-Moulton methods is of order 2

$$\tau_{i+1}(h) = O(h^2)$$

DERIVATION OF THE IMPLICIT MULTI-STEP METHOD (CONT)

As before

$$\begin{aligned} y(t_{i+1}) - y(t_i) &= \int_{-1}^0 y'(t_{i+1} + sh) ds \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{m-1} \nabla^k f(t_{i+1}, y(t_{i+1})) h (-1)^k \int_{-1}^0 \binom{-s}{k} ds \\ &\quad + \frac{h^{m+1}}{m!} \int_{-1}^0 s(s+1)\dots(s+m-1) f^m(\xi, y(\xi)) ds \end{aligned}$$

Example 20

For $k=3$ we have

$$\begin{aligned} (-1)^3 \int_{-1}^0 \binom{-s}{3} ds &= \int_{-1}^0 \frac{-s(-s-1)(-s-2)}{1.2.3} ds \\ &= \frac{1}{6} \left[\frac{s^4}{4} + s^3 + s^2 \right]_{-1}^0 = -\frac{1}{24} \end{aligned}$$

The general form of the Adams-Moulton method is

$$\begin{aligned} y(t_{i+1}) &= y(t_i) + h[f(t_{i+1}, y(t_{i+1})) - \frac{1}{2} \nabla f(t_{i+1}, y(t_{i+1})) - \frac{1}{12} \nabla^2 f(t_{i+1}, y(t_{i+1})) - \dots] \\ &\quad + \frac{h^{m+1}}{m!} \int_{-1}^0 s(s+1)\dots(s+m-1) f^m(\xi, y(\xi)) ds \end{aligned}$$

ADAMS-MOULTON TWO STEP METHOD

$$w_0 = \alpha \quad w_1 = \alpha_1$$

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + \frac{h}{12} [5f(t_{i+1}, w_{i+1}) + 8f(t_i, w_i) - f(t_{i-1}, w_{i-1})]$$

where $i=2,3,\dots,N-1$

The local truncation error is

$$\tau_{i+1}(h) = -\frac{1}{24}h^3y^4(\mu_i)$$

$$\mu_i \in (t_{i-1}, t_{i+1})$$

ADAMS-MOULTON THREE STEP METHOD

$$w_0 = \alpha \quad w_1 = \alpha_1 \quad w_2 = \alpha_2$$

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + \frac{h}{24} [9f(t_{i+1}, w_{i+1}) + 19f(t_i, w_i) - 5f(t_{i-1}, w_{i-1}) + f(t_{i-2}, w_{i-2})]$$

where $i=3,\dots,N-1$

The local truncation error is

$$\tau_{i+1}(h) = -\frac{19}{720}h^4y^5(\mu_i)$$

$$\mu_i \in (t_{i-2}, t_{i+1})$$

Example 21

$$y' = y - t^2 + 1 \quad 0 \leq t \leq 2 \quad y(0) = 0.5$$

Adams-Moulton two step $w_0 = \alpha_0$ and $w_1 = \alpha_1$ with

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + \frac{h}{12} [5f(t_{i+1}, w_{i+1}) + 8f(t_i, w_i) - f(t_{i-1}, w_{i-1})]$$

$$\text{for } i = 2, \dots, N-1$$

$$\text{truncation error } \tau_{i+1}(h) = -\frac{1}{24}h^3y^4(\mu_i) \quad \mu_i \in (t_{i-1}, t_{i+1}).$$

1. Calculate α_0 and α_1

From the initial condition we have $w_0 = 0.5$

To calculate w_1 we use the modified Euler method.

we now have $\alpha_1 = w_1 = 0.826$

2. Calculate w_i for $i = 2, \dots, N$

$$\begin{aligned}
 w_2 &= w_1 + \frac{h}{12} [5f(t_2, w_2) \\
 &\quad + 8f(t_1, w_1) - f(t_0, w_0)] \\
 &= w_1 + \frac{h}{12} [5(w_2 + t_2^2 + 1) \\
 &\quad + 8(w_1 + t_1^2 + 1) - (w_0 + t_0^2 + 1)] \\
 &= w_1 + \frac{h}{12} [5(w_2 + t_2^2 + 1) \\
 &\quad + 8(w_1 + t_1^2 + 1) - (w_0 + t_0^2 + 1)] \\
 &\quad \cdot \\
 &\quad \cdot \\
 &\quad \cdot \\
 (1 - \frac{5h}{12})w_{i+1} &= \frac{h}{12} [[8 + \frac{12}{h}]w_i - 5t_{i+1}^2 \\
 &\quad - 8t_i^2 + t_{i-1}^2 + 12]
 \end{aligned}$$

This, of course can be generalised.

The only unfortunate aspect of the implicit method is that you must convert it into an explicit method, this is not always possible. eg $y' = e^y$.

4.3 TABLE OF ADAM'S METHODS

| Order | Formula | LTE |
|-------|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1 | $y_{n+1} = y_n + hf_n$ | $\frac{h^2}{2}y''(\eta)$ |
| 2 | $y_{n+1} = y_n + \frac{h}{2}[3f_n - f_{n-1}]$ | $\frac{5h^3}{12}y'''(\eta)$ |
| 3 | $y_{n+1} = y_n + \frac{h}{12}[23f_n - 16f_{n-1} + 5f_{n-2}]$ | $\frac{3h^4}{8}y^{(4)}(\eta)$ |
| 4 | $y_{n+1} = y_n + \frac{h}{24}[55f_n - 59f_{n-1} + 37f_{n-2} - 9f_{n-3}]$ | $\frac{251h^5}{720}y^{(5)}(\eta)$ |

Table 2: Adams-Bashforth formulas of different order. LTE stands for local truncation error.

| Order | Formula | LTE |
|-------|---|-----------------------------------|
| 0 | $y_{n+1} = y_n + hf_{n+1}$ | $-\frac{h^2}{2}y''(\eta)$ |
| 1 | $y_{n+1} = y_n + \frac{h}{2}[f_{n+1} + f_n]$ | $-\frac{h^3}{12}y'''(\eta)$ |
| 2 | $y_{n+1} = y_n + \frac{h}{12}[5f_{n+1} + 8f_n - f_{n-1}]$ | $-\frac{h^4}{24}y^{(4)}(\eta)$ |
| 3 | $y_{n+1} = y_n + \frac{h}{24}[9f_{n+1} + 19f_n - 5f_{n-1} + f_{n-2}]$ | $-\frac{19h^5}{720}y^{(5)}(\eta)$ |

Table 3: Adams-Moulton formulas of different order. LTE stands for local truncation error.

4.4 PREDICTOR-CORRECTOR METHOD

In practice implicit methods are not used as above. They are used to improve approximations obtained by explicit methods. The combination of the two is called predictor-corrector method.

Example 22

Consider the following fourth order method for solving an initial-value problem.

1. Calculate w_0, w_1, w_2, w_3 for the four step Adams-Bashforth method, to do this we use a 4th order one step method, eg Runge Kutta.
2. Calculate an approximation w_4 to $y(t_4)$ using the Adams-Bashforth method as the predictor.

$$w_4^0 = w_3 + \frac{h}{24} [55f(t_3, w_3) - 59f(t_2, w_2) + 37f(t_1, w_1) - 9f(t_0, w_0)]$$

3. This approximation is improved by inserting w_4^0 in the RHS of the three step Adams-Moulton and using it as a corrector

$$w_4^1 = w_3 + \frac{h}{24} [9f(t_4, w_4^0) + 19f(t_3, w_3) - 5f(t_2, w_2) + f(t_1, w_1)]$$

The only new function evaluation is $f(t_4, w_4^0)$.

4. w_4^1 is the approximation of $y(t_4)$.
5. Repeat steps 2-4 for calculating the approximation of $y(t_5)$.
6. Repeat til $y(t_n)$.

Improved approximations to $y(t_{i+1})$ can be obtained by integrating the Adams Moulton formula

$$w_{i+1}^{k+1} = w_i + \frac{h}{24} [9f(t_{i+1}, w_{i+1}^k) + 19f(t_i, w_i) - 5f(t_{i-1}, w_{i-1}) + f(t_{i-2}, w_{i-2})]$$

w_{i+1}^{k+1} converges to the approximation of the implicit method rather than the solution $y(t_{i+1})$.

A more effective method is to reduce step-size if improved accuracy is needed.

4.5 IMPROVED STEP-SIZE MULTI-STEP METHOD

As the predictor corrector technique produces two approximations of each step it is a natural candidate for error-control. (see previous section)

Example 23

The Adams-Bashforth 4-step method

$$w_0 = \alpha \quad w_1 = \alpha_1 \quad w_2 = \alpha_2 \quad w_3 = \alpha_3$$

$$\begin{aligned} y(t_{i+1}) = & y(t_i) + \frac{h}{24} [55f(t_i, y(t_i)) - 59f(t_{i-1}, y(t_{i-1})) \\ & + 37f(t_{i-2}, y(t_{i-2})) - 9f(t_{i-3}, y(t_{i-3}))] \\ & + \frac{251}{720} h^5 y^{(5)}(\mu_i) \end{aligned}$$

$\mu_i \in (t_{i-3}, t_{i+1})$ the truncation error is

$$\frac{y(t_{i+1}) - w_{i+1}^0}{h} = \frac{251}{720} h^4 y^{(5)}(\mu_i) \quad (24)$$

Similarly for Adams-Moulton three step method

$$\begin{aligned} y(t_{i+1}) = & y(t_i) + \frac{h}{24} [9f(t_{i+1}, y(t_{i+1})) + 19f(t_i, y(t_i)) \\ & - 5f(t_{i-1}, y(t_{i-1})) + f(t_{i-2}, y(t_{i-2}))] \\ & - \frac{19}{720} h^5 y^{(5)}(\xi_i) \end{aligned}$$

$\xi_i \in (t_{i-2}, t_{i+1})$ the truncation error is

$$\frac{y(t_{i+1}) - w_{i+1}}{h} = -\frac{19}{720} h^4 y^{(5)}(\xi_i) \quad (25)$$

We make the assumption that for small h

$$y^{(5)}(\xi_i) \approx y^{(5)}(\mu_i)$$

Subtracting (24) from (25) we have

$$\frac{w_{i+1} - w_{i+1}^0}{h} = \frac{h^4}{720} [251y^{(5)}(\mu_i) + 19y^{(5)}(\xi_i)] \approx \frac{3}{8} h^4 y^{(5)}(\xi_i)$$

$$y^{(5)}(\xi_i) \approx \frac{8}{3h^5} (w_{i+1} - w_{i+1}^0) \quad (26)$$

Using this result to eliminate $h^4 y^{(5)}(\xi_i)$ from (25)

$$\begin{aligned} |\tau_{i+1}(h)| = \frac{|y(t_{i+1}) - w_{i+1}|}{h} & \approx \frac{19h^4}{720} \frac{8}{3h^5} (|w_{i+1} - w_{i+1}^0|) \\ & = \frac{19|w_{i+1} - w_{i+1}^0|}{270h} \end{aligned}$$

Now consider a new step size qh generating new approximations $\hat{w}_0, \hat{w}_1, \dots, \hat{w}_i$. The objective is to choose a q so that the local truncation is bounded by a tol ε

$$\frac{|y(t_i + qh) - \hat{w}_{i+1}|}{qh} = \frac{19h^4}{720} |y^{(5)}(\nu)| q^4 \approx \frac{19h^4}{720} \frac{8}{3h^5} (|w_{i+1} - w_{i+1}^0|) q^4$$

and we need to choose a q so that

$$\frac{|y(t_i + qh) - \hat{w}_{i+1}|}{qh} \approx \frac{19q^4 |w_{i+1} - w_{i+1}^0|}{270h} < \varepsilon$$

that is, we choose so that

$$q < \left(\frac{270}{19} \frac{h\varepsilon}{|w_{i+1} - w_{i+1}^0|} \right)^{\frac{1}{4}} \approx 2 \left(\frac{h\varepsilon}{|w_{i+1} - w_{i+1}^0|} \right)^{\frac{1}{4}}$$

q is normally chosen as

$$q = 1.5 \left(\frac{h\varepsilon}{|w_{i+1} - w_{i+1}^0|} \right)^{\frac{1}{4}}$$

With this knowledge we can change step sizes and control out error.

4.6 PROBLEM SHEET 3

1. Apply the 3-step Adams-Bashforth to approximate the solution of the given initial value problems using the indicated number of time steps. Compare the approximate solution with the given exact solution

a) $y' = t - y$, $(0 \leq t \leq 4)$
 with the initial condition $y(0) = 1$,
 $N = 4$, $y(t) = 2e^{-t} + t - 1$

b) $y' = y - t$, $(0 \leq t \leq 2)$
 with the initial condition $y(0) = 2$,
 $N = 4$, $y(t) = e^t + t + 1$

2. Apply the 2-step Adams-Moulton Method to approximate the solution of the given initial value problems using the indicated number of time steps. Compare the approximate solution with the given exact solution

a) $y' = t - y$, $(0 \leq t \leq 4)$
 with the initial condition $y(0) = 1$,
 $N = 4$, $y(t) = 2e^{-t} + t - 1$

b) $y' = y - t$, $(0 \leq t \leq 2)$
 with the initial condition $y(0) = 2$,
 $N = 4$, $y(t) = e^t + t + 1$

3. Derive the difference equation for the 1-step Adams-Bashforth method:

$$w_{n+1} = w_n + hf(t_n, w_n),$$

with the local truncation error

$$\tau_{n+1}(h) = \frac{h}{2}y''(\mu_n)$$

where $\mu_n \in (t_n, t_{n+1})$.

4. Derive the difference equation for the 2-step Adams-Bashforth method:

$$w_{n+1} = w_n + \left(\frac{3}{2}hf(t_n, w_n) - \frac{1}{2}hf(t_{n-1}, w_{n-1})\right),$$

with the local truncation error

$$\tau_{n+1}(h) = \frac{5h^2}{12}y'''(\mu_n)$$

where $\mu_n \in (t_{n-1}, t_{n+1})$.

5. Derive the difference equation for the 3-step Adams-Bashforth method:

$$w_{n+1} = w_n + \left(\frac{23}{12}hf(t_n, w_n) - \frac{4}{3}hf(t_{n-1}, w_{n-1}) + \frac{5}{12}hf(t_{n-2}, w_{n-2}) \right),$$

with the local truncation error

$$\tau_{n+1}(h) = \frac{9h^3}{24}y^4(\mu_n)$$

where $\mu_n \in (t_{n-2}, t_{n+1})$.

6. Derive the difference equation for the 0-step Adams-Moulton method:

$$w_{n+1} = w_n + hf(t_{n+1}, w_{n+1}),$$

with the local truncation error

$$\tau_{n+1}(h) = -\frac{h}{2}y^2(\mu_n)$$

where $\mu_n \in (t_{n-2}, t_{n+1})$.

7. Derive the difference equation for the 1-step Adams-Moulton method:

$$w_{n+1} = w_n + \frac{1}{2}hf(t_{n+1}, w_{n+1}) + \frac{1}{2}hf(t_n, w_n),$$

with the local truncation error

$$\tau_{n+1}(h) = -\frac{h^2}{12}y^3(\mu_n)$$

where $\mu_n \in (t_n, t_{n+1})$.

8. Derive the difference equation for the 2-step Adams-Moulton method:

$$w_{n+1} = w_n + \frac{5}{12}hf(t_{n+1}, w_{n+1}) + \frac{8}{12}hf(t_n, w_n) - \frac{1}{12}hf(t_{n-1}, w_{n-1}),$$

with the local truncation error

$$\tau_{n+1}(h) = -\frac{h^3}{24}y^4(\mu_n)$$

where $\mu_n \in (t_{n-1}, t_{n+1})$.

9. Derive the difference equation for the 3-step Adams-Moulton method:

$$w_{n+1} = w_n + \frac{9}{24}hf(t_{n+1}, w_{n+1}) + \frac{19}{24}hf(t_n, w_n) - \frac{5}{24}hf(t_{n-1}, w_{n-1}) + \frac{1}{24}hf(t_{n-2}, w_{n-2}),$$

with the local truncation error

$$\tau_{n+1}(h) = -\frac{h^4}{720}y^{(5)}(\mu_n)$$

where $\mu_n \in (t_{n-2}, t_{n+1})$.

CONSISTENCY, CONVERGENCE AND STABILITY

5.1 ONE STEP METHODS

Stability is why some methods give satisfactory results and some do not.

Definition A one-step method with local truncation error $t_i(h)$ at the i th step is said to be **consistent** with the differential equation it approximates if

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} (\max_{1 \leq i \leq N} |\tau_i(h)|) = 0$$

where

$$\tau_i(h) = \frac{y_{i+1} - y_i}{h} - F(t_i, y_i, h, f)$$

As $h \rightarrow 0$ does $F(t_i, y_i, h, f) \rightarrow f(t, y)$.

Definition A one step method difference equation is said to be **convergent** with respect to the differential equation and w_i , the approximation obtained from the difference method at the i th step.

$$\max_{h \rightarrow 0} \max_{1 \leq i \leq N} |y(t_i) - w_i| = 0$$

For Euler's method we have

$$\max_{1 \leq i \leq N} |w_i - y(t_i)| \leq \frac{Mh}{2L} |e^{L(b-a)} - 1|$$

so Euler's method is convergent wrt to a differential equation.

Theorem 5.1.1. Suppose the initial value problem

$$y' = f(t, y) \quad a \leq t \leq b \quad y(a) = \alpha$$

is approximated by a one step difference method in the form

$$\begin{aligned} w_0 &= \alpha \\ w_{i+1} &= w_i + hF(t_i, w_i : h) \end{aligned}$$

Suppose also that a number $h_0 > 0$ exists and that $F(t_i, w_i : h)$ is continuous and satisfies a Lipschitz Condition in the variable w with Lipschitz constant L on the set

$$D = \{(t, w, h) | a \leq t \leq b, -\infty < w < \infty, 0 \leq h \leq h_0\}$$

Then

1. The method is stable;
2. The difference method is convergent if and only if it is consistent - that is iff

$$F(t_i, w_i : 0) = f(t, y) \text{ for all } a \leq t \leq b$$

3. If a function τ exists and for each $i = 1, 2, \dots, N$, the local truncation error $\tau_i(h)$ satisfies $|\tau_i(h)| \leq \tau(h)$ whenever $0 \leq h \leq h_0$, then

$$|y(t_i) - w_i| \leq \frac{\tau(h)}{L} e^{L(t_i - a)}.$$

Example 24

Consider the modified Euler method given by

$$w_0 = \alpha$$

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + \frac{h}{2} [f(t_i, w_i) + f(t_{i+1}, w_i + hf(t_i, w_i))]$$

Verify that this method satisfies the theorem. For this method

$$F(t, w : h) = \frac{1}{2}f(t, w) + \frac{1}{2}f(t + h, w + hf(t, w))$$

If f satisfies the Lipschitz Condition on $\{(t, w) | a \leq t \leq b, -\infty < w < \infty\}$ in the variable w with constant L , then

$$\begin{aligned} F(t, w : h) - F(t, \hat{w} : h) &= \frac{1}{2}f(t, w) + \frac{1}{2}f(t + h, w + hf(t, w)) \\ &\quad - \frac{1}{2}f(t, \hat{w}) - \frac{1}{2}f(t + h, \hat{w} + hf(t, \hat{w})) \end{aligned}$$

the Lipschitz Condition on f leads to

$$\begin{aligned}
 |F(t, w : h) - F(t, \hat{w} : h)| &\leq \frac{1}{2}L|w - \hat{w}| \\
 &\quad + \frac{1}{2}L|w + hf(t, w) - \hat{w} - hf(t, \hat{w})| \\
 &\leq L|w - \hat{w}| + \frac{1}{2}L|hf(t, w) - hf(t, \hat{w})| \\
 &\leq L|w - \hat{w}| + \frac{1}{2}hL^2|w - \hat{w}| \\
 &\leq \left(L + \frac{1}{2}hL^2\right)|w - \hat{w}|
 \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, F satisfies a Lipschitz Condition in w on the set

$$D = \{(t, w, h) | a \leq t \leq b, -\infty < w < \infty, 0 \leq h \leq h_0\}$$

for any $h_0 > 0$ with constant $L' = (L + \frac{1}{2}hL^2)$

Finally, if f is continuous on $\{(t, w) | a \leq t \leq b, -\infty < w < \infty\}$, then F is continuous on

$$D = \{(t, w, h) | a \leq t \leq b, -\infty < w < \infty, 0 \leq h \leq h_0\}$$

so this implies that the method is stable. Letting $h = 0$ we have

$$F(t, w : 0) = \frac{1}{2}f(t, w) + \frac{1}{2}f(t + 0, w + 0f(t, w)) = f(t, w)$$

so the consistency condition holds.

We know that the method is of order $O(h^2)$

5.2 MULTI-STEP METHODS

The general multi-step method for approximating the solution to the Initial Value Problem

$$y' = f(t, y) \quad a \leq t \leq b \quad y(a) = \alpha$$

can be written in the form

$$w_0 = \alpha \quad w_1 = \alpha_1 \quad \dots \quad w_{m-1} = \alpha_{m-1}$$

$$w_{i+1} = a_{m-1}w_i + a_{m-2}w_{i-1} + \dots + a_0w_{i+1-m} + hF(t_i, h, w_{i+1}, \dots, w_{i+1-m}),$$

for each $i = m - 1, \dots, N - 1$ where a_0, a_1, \dots, a_{m-1} are constants. The local truncation error for a multi-step method expressed in this form is

$$\tau_{i+1}(h) = \frac{y(t_{i+1}) - a_{m-1}y(t_i) - a_{m-2}y(t_{i-1}) + \dots - a_0y(t_{i+1-m})}{h} \\ + F(t_i, h, y(t_{i+1}), \dots, y(t_{i+1-m}))$$

for each $i = m - 1, \dots, N - 1$.

Definition A multi-step method is **consistent** if both

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} |\tau_i(h)| = 0 \quad \text{for all } i = m, \dots, N \\ \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} |\alpha_i - y(t_i)| = 0 \quad \text{for all } i = 0, \dots, m - 1$$

Definition A multi-step method is **convergent** if the solution to the difference equation approaches the solution of the differential equation as the step size approaches zero.

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} |w_i - y(t_i)| = 0$$

Theorem 5.2.1. Suppose the Initial Value Problem

$$y' = f(t, y) \quad a \leq t \leq b \quad y(a) = \alpha$$

is approximated by an Adams predictor-corrector method with an m -step Adams-Bashforth predictor equation

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + h[b_{m-1}f(t_i, w_i) + \dots + b_0f(t_{i+1-m}, w_{i+1-m})]$$

with local truncation error $\tau_{i+1}(h)$ and an $(m-1)$ -step Adams-Moulton equation

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + h[\hat{b}_{m-1}f(t_{i+1}, w_{i+1}) + \dots + \hat{b}_0f(t_{i+2-m}, w_{i+2-m})]$$

with local truncation error $\hat{\tau}_{i+1}(h)$. In addition suppose that $f(t, y)$ and $f_y(t, y)$ are continuous on $\{(t, y) | a \leq t \leq b, -\infty < y < \infty\}$ and that f_y is bounded. Then the local truncation error $\sigma_{i+1}(h)$ of the predictor-corrector method is

$$\sigma_{i+1}(h) = \hat{\tau}_{i+1}(h) + h\tau_{i+1}(h)\hat{b}_{m-1}\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(t_{i+1}, \theta_{i+1})$$

where $\theta_{i+1} \in [0, h\tau_{i+1}(h)]$.

Moreover, there exists constants k_1 and k_2 such that

$$|w_i - y(t_i)| \leq \left[\max_{0 \leq j \leq m-1} |w_j - y(t_j)| + k_1\sigma(h) \right] e^{k_2(t_i - a)}.$$

where $\sigma(h) = \max_{m \leq i \leq N} |\sigma_i(h)|$.

Definition Associated with the difference equation

$$w_0 = \alpha \quad w_1 = \alpha_1 \quad \dots \quad w_{m-1} = \alpha_{m-1}$$

$$w_{i+1} = a_{m-1}w_i + a_{m-2}w_{i-1} + \dots + a_0w_{i+1-m} + hF(t_i, h, w_{i+1}, \dots, w_{i+1-m}),$$

is the characteristic equation given by

$$\lambda^m - a_{m-1}\lambda^{m-1} - a_{m-2}\lambda^{m-2} - \dots - a_0 = 0$$

Definition Let $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_m$ denote the roots of the that characteristic equation

$$\lambda^m - a_{m-1}\lambda^{m-1} - a_{m-2}\lambda^{m-2} - \dots - a_0 = 0$$

associated with the multi-step difference method

$$w_0 = \alpha \quad w_1 = \alpha_1 \quad \dots \quad w_{m-1} = \alpha_{m-1}$$

$$w_{i+1} = a_{m-1}w_i + a_{m-2}w_{i-1} + \dots + a_0w_{i+1-m} + hF(t_i, h, w_{i+1}, \dots, w_{i+1-m}),$$

If $|\lambda_i| \leq 1$ for each $i = 1, \dots, m$ and all roots with absolute value 1 are simple roots then the difference equation is said to satisfy the **root condition**.

Definition 1. Methods that satisfy the root condition and have $\lambda = 1$ as the only root of the characteristic equation of magnitude one are called **strongly stable**;

2. Methods that satisfy the root condition and have more than one distinct root with magnitude one are called **weakly stable**;

3. Methods that do not satisfy the root condition are called **unstable**.

Theorem 5.2.2. *A multi-step method of the form*

$$w_0 = \alpha \quad w_1 = \alpha_1 \quad \dots \quad w_{m-1} = \alpha_{m-1}$$

$$w_{i+1} = a_{m-1}w_i + a_{m-2}w_{i-1} + \dots + a_0w_{i+1-m} + hF(t_i, h, w_{i+1}, \dots, w_{i+1-m})$$

is stable iff it satisfies the root condition. Moreover if the difference method is consistent with the differential equation then the method is stable iff it is convergent.

Example 25

We have seen that the fourth order Adams-Bashforth method can be expressed as

$$w_{i+1} = a_{m-1}w_i + a_{m-2}w_{i-1} + \dots + a_0w_{i+1-m} + hF(t_i, h, w_{i+1}, w_i, \dots, w_{i-3})$$

where

$$F(t_i, h, w_{i+1}, w_i, \dots, w_{i-3}) =$$

$$\frac{1}{24} [55f(t_i, w_i) - 59f(t_{i-1}, w_{i-1}) + 37f(t_{i-2}, w_{i-2}) - 9f(t_{i-3}, w_{i-3})]$$

so $m = 4, a_0 = 0, a_1 = 0, a_2 = 0$ and $a_3 = 1$.

The characteristic equation is

$$\lambda^4 - \lambda^3 = \lambda^3(\lambda - 1) = 0$$

which has the roots $\lambda_1 = 1, \lambda_2 = 0, \lambda_3 = 0$ and $\lambda_4 = 0$.

It satisfies the root condition and is strongly stable.

Example 26

The explicit multi-step method given by

$$w_{i+1} = w_{i-3} + \frac{4h}{3} [2f(t_i, w_i) - f(t_{i-1}, w_{i-1}) + f(t_{i-2}, w_{i-2})]$$

has a characteristic equation

$$\lambda^4 - 1 = 0$$

which has the roots $\lambda_1 = 1, \lambda_2 = -1, \lambda_3 = i$ and $\lambda_4 = -i$, the method satisfies the root condition, but is only weakly stable.

Example 27

The explicit multi-step method given by

$$w_{i+1} = aw_{i-3} + \frac{4h}{3} [2f(t_i, w_i) - f(t_{i-1}, w_{i-1}) + f(t_{i-2}, w_{i-2})]$$

has a characteristic equation

$$\lambda^4 - a = 0$$

which has the roots $\lambda_1 = \sqrt[4]{a}, \lambda_2 = -\sqrt[4]{a}, \lambda_3 = i\sqrt[4]{a}$ and $\lambda_4 = -i\sqrt[4]{a}$, when $a > 1$ the method does not satisfy the root condition, and hence is unstable.

Example 28

Solving the Initial Value Problem

$$y' = -0.5y^2 \quad y(0) = 1$$

Using a weakly stable method

$$w_{i+1} = w_{i-3} + \frac{4h}{3}[2w_i - w_{i-1} + w_{i-2}]$$

Using an two different unstable method

1.

$$w_{i+1} = 1.0001w_{i-3} + \frac{4h}{3}[2f(t_i, w_i) - f(t_{i-1}, w_{i-1}) + f(t_{i-2}, w_{i-2})]$$

2.

$$w_{i+1} = 1.5w_{i-3} + \frac{4h}{3}[2f(t_i, w_i) - f(t_{i-1}, w_{i-1}) + f(t_{i-2}, w_{i-2})]$$

$$\lambda^4 - a = 0$$

which has the roots $\lambda_1 = \sqrt[4]{a}$, $\lambda_2 = -\sqrt[4]{a}$, $\lambda_3 = i\sqrt[4]{a}$ and $\lambda_4 = -i\sqrt[4]{a}$, when $a > 1$ the method dose not satisfy the root condition, and hence is unstable.

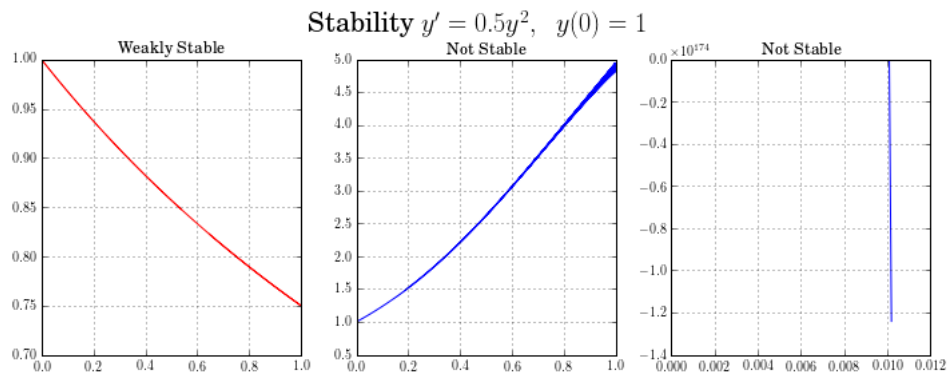


Figure 5.2.1: Python output: Left: Weakly stable solution, middle: unstable, right: very unstable

5.3 PROBLEM SHEET 4

1. Determine whether the 2-step Adams-Bashforth Method is consistent, stable and convergent

$$w_{n+1} = w_n + \left(\frac{3}{2}hf(t_n, w_n) - \frac{1}{2}hf(t_{n-1}, w_{n-1}) \right),$$

2. Determine whether the 2-step Adams-Moulton Method is consistent, stable and convergent

$$w_{n+1} = w_n + \frac{5}{12}hf(t_{n+1}, w_{n+1}) + \frac{8}{12}hf(t_n, w_n) - \frac{1}{12}hf(t_{n-1}, w_{n-1}),$$

3. Determine whether the linear multistep following methods are consistent, stable and convergent

a)

$$w_{n+1} = w_{n-1} + \frac{1}{3}h[f(t_{n+1}, w_{n+1}) + 4f(t_n, w_n) + f(t_{n-1}, w_{n-1})].$$

b)

$$w_{n+1} = \frac{4}{3}w_n - \frac{1}{3}w_{n-1} + \frac{2}{3}h[f(t_{n+1}, w_{n+1})].$$

INITIAL VALUE PROBLEM REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. a) Derive the Euler approximation show it has a local truncation error of $O(h)$ of the Ordinary Differential Equation

$$y'(x) = f(x, y)$$

with initial condition

$$y(a) = \alpha.$$

[8 marks]

- b) Suppose f is a continuous and satisfies a Lipschitz condition with constant L on $D = \{(t, y) | a \leq t \leq b, -\infty < y < \infty\}$ and that a constant M exists with the property that

$$|y''(t)| \leq M.$$

Let $y(t)$ denote the unique solution of the IVP

$$y' = f(t, y) \quad a \leq t \leq b \quad y(a) = \alpha$$

and w_0, w_1, \dots, w_N be the approx generated by the Euler method for some positive integer N . Then show for $i = 0, 1, \dots, N$

$$|y(t_i) - w_i| \leq \frac{Mh}{2L} |e^{L(t_i-a)} - 1|$$

You may assume the two lemmas:

If s and t are positive real numbers $\{a_i\}_{i=0}^N$ is a sequence satisfying $a_0 \geq \frac{-t}{s}$ and $a_{i+1} \leq (1+s)a_i + t$ then

$$a_{i+1} \leq e^{(i+1)s} \left(a_0 + \frac{t}{s} \right) - \frac{t}{s}$$

For all $x \geq 0.1$ and any positive m we have

$$0 \leq (1+x)^m \leq e^{mx}$$

[17 marks]

- c) Use Euler's method to estimate the solution of

$$y' = (1 - x)y^2 - y; \quad y(0) = 1$$

at $x=1$, using $h = 0.25$.

[8 marks]

2. a) Derive the difference equation for the Midpoint Runge Kutta method

$$w_{n+1} = w_n + k_2$$

$$k_1 = hf(t_n, w_n)$$

$$k_2 = hf(t_n + \frac{1}{2}h, w_n + \frac{1}{2}k_1)$$

for solving the ordinary differential equation

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = f(t, y)$$

$$y(t_0) = y_0$$

by using a formula of the form

$$w_{n+1} = w_n + ak_1 + bk_2$$

where k_1 is defined as above,

$$k_2 = hf(t_n + \alpha h, w_n + \beta k_1)$$

and a, b, α and β are constants are determined. Prove that $a + b = 1$ and $b\alpha = \frac{1}{2}$ and choose appropriate values to give the Midpoint Runge Kutta method.

[18 marks]

- b) Show that the midpoint Runge Kutta method is stable.

[5 marks]

- c) Use the Runge Kutta method to approximate the solutions to the following initial value problem

$$y' = 1 + (t - y)^2, \quad 2 \leq t \leq 3, \quad y(2) = 1$$

with $h = 0.2$ with the exact solution $y(t) = t + \frac{1}{1-t}$.

[10 marks]

3. a) Derive the two step Adams-Bashforth method:

$$w_{n+1} = w_n + \left(\frac{3}{2}hf(t_n, w_n) - \frac{1}{2}hf(t_{n-1}, w_{n-1}) \right),$$

and the local truncation error

$$\tau_{n+1}(h) = -\frac{5h^2}{12}y^3(\mu_n)$$

[18 marks]

- b) Apply the two step Adams-Bashforth method to approximate the solution of the initial value problem:

$$y' = ty - y, \quad (0 \leq t \leq 2) \quad y(0) = 1$$

. Using $N = 4$ steps, given that $y_1 = 0.6872$.

[15 marks]

4. a) Derive the Adams-Moulton two step method and its truncation error which is of the form

$$w_0 = \alpha_0 \quad w_1 = \alpha_1$$

$$w_{n+1} = w_n + \frac{h}{12}[5f(t_{n+1}, w_{n+1}) + 8f(t_n, w_n) - f(t_{n-2}, w_{n-2})]$$

and the local truncation error

$$\tau_{n+1}(h) = -\frac{h^3}{24}y^4(\mu_n)$$

[23 marks]

- b) Define the terms strongly stable, weakly stable and unstable with respect to the characteristic equation.

[5 marks]

- c) Show that the Adams-Bashforth two step method is strongly stable.

[5 marks]

5. a) Given the initial value problem:

$$y' = f(t, y), \quad y(t_0) = y_0$$

and a numerical method which generates a numerical solution $(w_n)_{n=0}^N$, explain what it means for the method to be convergent.

[5 marks]

- b) Using the 2-step Adams-Bashforth method:

$$w_{n+1} = w_n + \frac{3}{2}hf(t_n, w_n) - \frac{1}{2}hf(t_{n-1}, w_{n-1})$$

as a predictor, and the 2-step Adams-Moulton method:

$$w_{n+1} = w_n + \frac{h}{12}[5f(t_{n+1}, w_{n+1}) + 8f(t_n, w_n) - f(t_{n-2}, w_{n-2})]$$

as a corrector, apply the 2-step Adams predictor-corrector method to approximate the solution of the initial value problem

$$y' = ty^3 - y, \quad (0 \leq t \leq 2), \quad y(0) = 1$$

using $N=4$ steps, given $y_1 = 0.5$.

[18 marks]

- c) Using the predictor corrector define a bound for the error by controlling the step size.

[10 marks]

6. a) Given the Midpoint point (Runge- Kutta) method

$$w_0 = y_0$$

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + hf(x_i + \frac{h}{2}, w_i + \frac{h}{2}f(x_i, w_i))$$

Assume that the Runge Kutta method satisfies the Lipschitz condition. Then for the initial value problems

$$y' = f(x, y)$$

$$y(x_0) = Y_0$$

Show that the numerical solution $\{w_n\}$ satisfies

$$\max_{a \leq x \leq b} |y(x_n) - w_n| \leq e^{(b-a)L} |y_0 - w_0| + \left[\frac{e^{(b-a)L} - 1}{L} \right] \tau(h)$$

where

$$\tau(h) = \max_{a \leq x \leq b} |\tau_n(y)|$$

If the consistency condition

$$\delta(h) \rightarrow 0 \text{ as } h \rightarrow 0$$

where

$$\delta(h) = \max_{a \leq x \leq b} |f(x, y) - F(x, y; h; f)|$$

is satisfied then the numerical solution w_n converges to $Y(x_n)$.

[18 marks]

b) Consider the differential equation

$$y' - y + x - 2 = 0, \quad 0 \leq x \leq 1, \quad y(0) = 0.$$

Apply the midpoint method to approximate the solution at $y(0.4)$ using $h = 0.2$

[11 marks]

c) How would you improve on this result.

[4 marks]

BOUNDARY VALUE PROBLEMS

7.1 SYSTEMS OF EQUATIONS

An m-th order system of equation of first order Initial Value Problem can be expressed in the form

$$\begin{aligned}
 \frac{du_1}{dt} &= f_1(t, u_1, \dots, u_m) \\
 \frac{du_2}{dt} &= f_2(t, u_1, \dots, u_m) \\
 &\vdots \\
 \frac{du_m}{dt} &= f_m(t, u_1, \dots, u_m)
 \end{aligned} \tag{27}$$

for $a \leq t \leq b$ with the initial conditions

$$\begin{aligned}
 u_1(a) &= \alpha_1 \\
 u_2(a) &= \alpha_2 \\
 &\vdots \\
 u_m(a) &= \alpha_m
 \end{aligned} \tag{28}$$

This can also be written in vector form

$$\mathbf{u}' = \mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{u})$$

with initial conditions

$$\mathbf{u}(a) = \alpha$$

Definition The function $f(t, u_1, \dots, u_m)$ defined on the set

$$D = \{(t, u_1, \dots, u_m) | a \leq t \leq b, -\infty < u_i < \infty, i = 1, \dots, m\}$$

is said to be a Lipschitz Condition on D in the variables u_1, \dots, u_m if a constant L exists with the property that

$$|f(t, u_1, \dots, u_m) - f(t, z_1, z_2, \dots, z_m)| \leq L \sum_{j=1}^m |u_j - z_j|$$

for all (t, u_1, \dots, u_m) and $(t, z_1, z_2, \dots, z_m)$ in D.

Theorem 7.1.1. Suppose

$$D = \{(t, u_1, \dots, u_m) | a \leq t \leq b, -\infty < u_i < \infty, i = 1, \dots, m\}$$

is continuous on D and satisfy a Lipschitz Condition. The system of 1st order equations subject to the initial conditions, has a unique solution $u_1(t), u_2(t), \dots, u_m(t)$ for $a \leq t \leq b$.

Example 29

Using Euler method on the system

$$\begin{aligned} u' &= u^2 - 2uv & u(0) &= 1 \\ v' &= tu + u^2 \sin v & v(0) &= -1 \end{aligned}$$

for $0 \leq t \leq 0.5$ and $h = 0.05$ the general Euler difference system of equations is of the form

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{u}_{i+1} &= \hat{u}_i + hf(t_i, \hat{u}_i, \hat{v}_i) \\ \hat{v}_{i+1} &= \hat{v}_i + hg(t_i, \hat{u}_i, \hat{v}_i) \end{aligned}$$

Applied the the Initial Value Problem

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{u}_{i+1} &= \hat{u}_i + 0.05(\hat{u}_i^2 - 2\hat{u}_i\hat{v}_i) \\ \hat{v}_{i+1} &= \hat{v}_i + 0.05(t_i\hat{u}_i + \hat{u}_i^2 \sin(\hat{v}_i)) \end{aligned}$$

We know for $i = 0$, $\hat{u}_0 = 1$ and $\hat{v}_0 = -1$ from the initial conditions.

For $i=0$ we have

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{u}_1 &= \hat{u}_0 + 0.05(\hat{u}_0^2 - 2\hat{u}_0\hat{v}_0) = 1.15 \\ \hat{v}_1 &= \hat{v}_0 + 0.05(t_0\hat{u}_0 + \hat{u}_0^2 \sin(\hat{v}_0)) = -1.042 \end{aligned}$$

and so forth.

7.2 HIGHER ORDER EQUATIONS

Definition A general m th order initial value problem

$$y^{(m)}(t) = f(t, y, \dots, y^{(m-1)}) \quad a \leq t \leq b$$

with initial conditions

$$y(a) = \alpha_1, y'(a) = \alpha_2, \dots, y^{(m-1)}(a) = \alpha_m$$

can be converted into a system of equations as in (27) and (28)

Let $u_1(t) = y(t)$, $u_2(t) = y'(t)$, ..., $u_m(t) = y^{(m-1)}(t)$. This produces the first order system of equations

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{du_1}{dt} &= \frac{dy}{dt} = u_2 \\
\frac{du_2}{dt} &= \frac{dy'}{dt} = u_3 \\
&\vdots \\
&\vdots \\
&\vdots \\
\frac{du_{m-1}}{dt} &= \frac{dy^{(m-2)}}{dt} = u_m \\
\frac{du_m}{dt} &= \frac{dy^{(m-1)}}{dt} f_m(t, y, \dots, y^{(m-1)}) = f(t, u_1, \dots, u_m)
\end{aligned}$$

with initial conditions

$$\begin{aligned}
u_1(a) &= y(a) = \alpha_1 \\
u_2(a) &= y'(a) = \alpha_2 \\
&\vdots \\
&\vdots \\
&\vdots \\
u_m(a) &= y^{(m-1)}(a) = \alpha_m
\end{aligned}$$

Example 30

$$y'' + 3y' + 2y = e^t$$

with initial conditions $y(0) = 1$ and $y'(0) = 2$ can be converted to the system

$$\begin{aligned}
u' &= v & u(0) &= 1 \\
v' &= e^t - 2u - 3v & v(0) &= 2
\end{aligned}$$

the difference Euler equation is of the form

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{u}_{i+1} &= \hat{u}_i + h v(t_i, \hat{u}_i, \hat{v}_i) \\
\hat{v}_{i+1} &= \hat{v}_i + h(e^{t_i} - 2\hat{u}_i - 3\hat{v}_i)
\end{aligned}$$

7.3 BOUNDARY VALUE PROBLEMS

Consider the second order differential equation

$$y'' = f(x, y, y') \quad (29)$$

defined on an interval $a \leq x \leq b$. Here f is a function of three variables and y is an unknown. The general solution to 29 contains two arbitrary constants so in order to determine it uniquely it is necessary to impose two additional conditions on y . When one of these is given at $x = a$ and the other at $x = b$ the problem is called a boundary value problem and associated conditions are called boundary condi-

tions.

The simplest type of boundary conditions are

$$y(a) = \alpha$$

$$y(b) = \beta$$

for a given numbers α and β . However more general conditions such as

$$\lambda_1 y(a) + \lambda_2 y'(a) = \alpha_1$$

$$\mu_1 y(b) + \mu_2 y'(b) = \alpha_2$$

for given numbers α_i, λ_i and μ_i ($i=1,2$) are sometimes imposed.

Unlike Initial Value Problem whose problems are uniquely solvable boundary value problem can have no solution or many.

Example 31

The differential equation

$$y'' + y = 0$$

$$y_1(x) = y(x) \quad y_2(x) = y'(x)$$

$$y_1' = y_2$$

$$y_2' = -y_1$$

It has the general solution

$$w(x) = C_1 \sin(x) + C_2 \cos(x)$$

where C_1, C_2 are constants.

The special solution $w(x) = \sin(x)$ is the only solution that satisfies

$$w(0) = 0 \quad w\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = 1$$

All functions of the form $w(x) = C_1 \sin(x)$ where C_1 is an arbitrary constant, satisfies

$$w(0) = 0 \quad w(\pi) = 0$$

while there is no solution for the boundary conditions

$$w(0) = 0 \quad w(\pi) = 1.$$

◇

While we cannot state that all boundary value problem are unique we can say a few things.

7.4 SOME THEOREMS ABOUT BOUNDARY VALUE PROBLEM

Writing the general linear subset Boundary Value Problem

$$\begin{aligned} y'' &= p(x)y' + q(x)y + g(x) \quad a < x < b \\ A \begin{pmatrix} y(a) \\ y'(a) \end{pmatrix} + B \begin{pmatrix} y(b) \\ y'(b) \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} \gamma_1 \\ \gamma_2 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (30)$$

The homogeneous problem is the case in which $g(x)$ and $\gamma_1 = \gamma_2 = 0$.

Theorem 7.4.1. *The non-homogeneous problem (30) has a unique solution $y(x)$ on $[a, b]$ for each set of given $\{g(x), \gamma_1, \gamma_2\}$ if and only if the homogeneous problem has only the trivial solutions $y(x) = 0$.*

For conditions under which the homogeneous problem (30) has only the zero solution we consider the following subset of problem

$$\begin{aligned} y'' &= p(x)y' + q(x)y + g(x) \quad a < x < b \\ a_0y(a) - a_1y'(a) &= \gamma_1 \\ b_0y(b) + b_1y'(b) &= \gamma_2 \end{aligned} \quad (31)$$

Assume the following conditions

$$\begin{aligned} q(x) &> 0 \quad a \leq x \leq b \\ a_0, a_1 &\geq 0 \quad b_0, b_1 \geq 0 \end{aligned} \quad (32)$$

$|a_1| + |a_0| \neq 0, |b_1| + |b_0| \neq 0, |a_0| + |b_0| \neq 0$ Then the homogeneous problem for (31) has only the zero solution therefore the theorem is applicable and the non-homogeneous problem has a unique solution for each set of data $\{g(x), \gamma_1, \gamma_2\}$.

The theory for a non-linear problem is far more complicated than that of a linear problem. Looking at the class of problems

$$\begin{aligned} y'' &= f(x, y, y') \quad a < x < b \\ a_0y(a) - a_1y'(a) &= \gamma_1 \\ b_0y(b) + b_1y'(b) &= \gamma_2 \end{aligned} \quad (33)$$

The function f is assumed to satisfy the following Lipschitz Condition

$$\begin{aligned} |f(x, u_1, v_1) - f(x, u_2, v_2)| &\leq K_1|u_1 - u_2| \\ |f(x, u_1, v_1) - f(x, u_2, v_2)| &\leq K_2|v_1 - v_2| \end{aligned} \quad (34)$$

for all points in the region

$$R = \{(x, u, v) | a \leq x \leq b, -\infty < u, v < \infty\}$$

Theorem 7.4.2. *The problem (33) assumes $f(x, u, v)$ is continuous on the region R and it satisfies the Lipschitz condition (34). In addition assume that f , on R , satisfies*

$$\frac{\partial f(x, u, v)}{\partial u} > 0 \quad \left| \frac{\partial f(x, u, v)}{\partial v} \right| \leq M$$

for some constant $M > 0$ for the boundary conditions of 33 assume that $|a_1| + |a_0| \neq 0, |b_1| + |b_0| \neq 0, |a_0| + |b_0| \neq 0$. The boundary value problem has a unique solution.

Example 32

The boundary value problem boundary value problem

$$y'' + e^{-xy} + \sin(y') = 0 \quad 1 < x < 2$$

with $y(1) = y(2) = 0$, has

$$f(x, y, y') = -e^{-xy} - \sin(y')$$

Since

$$\frac{\partial f(x, y, y')}{\partial y} = xe^{xy} > 0$$

and

$$\left| \frac{\partial f(x, y, y')}{\partial y'} \right| = |-\cos(y')| \leq 1$$

this problem has a unique solution. \diamond

7.5 SHOOTING METHODS

The principal of the shooting method is to change our original boundary value problem boundary value problem into 2 Initial Value Problem.

7.5.1 Linear Shooting method

Looking at problem class (31). We break this down into two Initial Value Problem.

$$y_1'' = p(x)y_1' + q(x)y_1 + r(x) \quad a \leq x \leq b \quad y_1(a) = \alpha \quad y_1'(a) = 0 \quad (35)$$

$$y_2'' = p(x)y_2' + q(x)y_2 \quad a \leq x \leq b \quad y_2(a) = 0 \quad y_2'(a) = 1 \quad (36)$$

combining these results together to get the unique solution

$$y(x) = y_1(x) + \frac{\beta - y_1(b)}{y_2(b)} y_2(x) \quad (37)$$

provided that $y_2(b) \neq 0$.

Example 33

$$y'' = 2y' + 3y - 6$$

with boundary conditions

$$y(0) = 3$$

$$y(1) = e^3 + 2$$

The exact solution is

$$y = e^{3x} + 2$$

breaking this boundary value problem into two Initial Value Problem's

$$y_1'' = 2y_1' + 3y_1 - 6 \quad y_1(a) = 3, \quad y_1'(a) = 0 \quad (38)$$

$$y_2'' = 2y_2' + 3y_2 \quad y_2(a) = 0, \quad y_2'(a) = 1 \quad (39)$$

Discretising (38)

$$y_1 = u_1 \quad y_1' = u_2$$

$$u_1' = u_2 \quad u_1(a) = 3$$

$$u_2' = 2u_2 + 3u_1 - 6 \quad u_2(a) = 0$$

using the Euler method we have the two difference equations

$$u_{1i+1} = u_{1i} + hu_{2i}$$

$$u_{2i+1} = u_{2i} + h(2u_{2i} + 3u_{1i} - 6)$$

Discretising (39)

$$y_2 = w_1 \quad y_2' = w_2$$

$$w_1' = w_2 \quad w_1(a) = 0$$

$$w_2' = 2w_2 + 3w_1 \quad w_2(a) = 1$$

using the Euler method we have the two difference equations

$$w_{1i+1} = w_{1i} + hw_{2i}$$

$$w_{2i+1} = w_{2i} + h(2w_{2i} + 3w_{1i})$$

combining all these to get our solution

$$y_i = u_{1i} + \frac{\beta - u_1(b)}{w_1(b)} w_{1i}$$

It can be said

$$|y_i - y(x_i)| \leq Kh^n \left| 1 + \frac{w_{1i}}{u_{1i}} \right|$$

$O(h^n)$ is the order of the method.

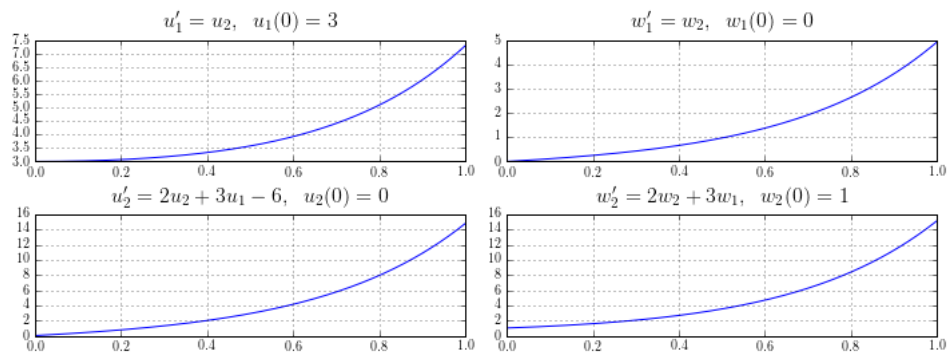


Figure 7.5.1: Python output: Shooting Method

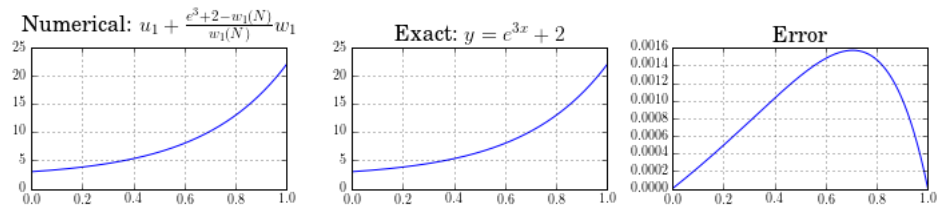


Figure 7.5.2: Python output: Shooting Method error

7.5.2 The Shooting method for non-linear equations

Example 34

$$y'' = -2yy' \quad y(0) = 0 \quad y(1) = 1$$

The corresponding initial value problem is

$$y'' = -2yy' \quad y(0) = 0 \quad y'(0) = \lambda \quad (40)$$

Which reduces to the first order system, letting $y_1 = y$ and $y_2 = y'$.

$$\begin{aligned} y_1' &= y_2 & y_1(0) &= 0 \\ y_2' &= -2y_1y_2 & y_2(0) &= \lambda \end{aligned}$$

Taking $\lambda = 1$ and $\lambda = 2$ as the first and second guess of $y'(0)$. (40) depends on two variable x and λ . \diamond

How to choose λ ?

Our goal is to choose λ such that.

$$F(\lambda) = y(b, \lambda) - \beta = 0$$

We use Newton's method to generate the sequence λ_k with only the initial approx λ_0 . The iteration has the form

$$\lambda_k = \lambda_{k-1} - \frac{y(b, \lambda_{k-1}) - \beta}{\frac{dy}{d\lambda}(b, \lambda_{k-1})}$$

and requires knowledge of $\frac{dy}{d\lambda}(b, \lambda_{k-1})$. This present a difficulty since an explicit representation for $y(b, \lambda)$ is unknown we only know $y(b, \lambda_0)$, $y(b, \lambda_1), \dots, y(b, \lambda_{k-1})$.

Rewriting our Initial Value Problem we have it so that it depends on both x and λ .

$$y''(x, \lambda) = f(x, y(x, \lambda), y'(x, \lambda)) \quad a \leq x \leq b$$

$$y(a, \lambda) = \alpha \quad y'(a, \lambda) = \lambda$$

differentiating with respect to λ and let $z(x, \lambda)$ denote $\frac{\partial y}{\partial \lambda}(x, \lambda)$ we have

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \lambda}(y'') = \frac{\partial f}{\partial \lambda} = \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} \frac{\partial y}{\partial \lambda} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y'} \frac{\partial y'}{\partial \lambda}$$

Now

$$\frac{\partial y'}{\partial \lambda} = \frac{\partial}{\partial \lambda} \frac{\partial y}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial \lambda} \right) = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = z'$$

we have

$$z''(x, \lambda) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} z(x, \lambda) + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y'} z'(x, \lambda)$$

for $a \leq x \leq b$ and the boundary conditions

$$z(a, \lambda) = 0, \quad z'(a, \lambda) = 1$$

Now we have

$$\lambda_k = \lambda_{k-1} - \frac{y(b, \lambda_{k-1}) - \beta}{z(b, \lambda_{k-1})}$$

We can solve the original non-linear subset Boundary Value Problem by solving the 2 Initial Value Problem's.

Example 35

(cont.)

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = -2y' \quad \frac{\partial f}{\partial y'} = -2y$$

We now have the two Initial Value Problem's

$$y'' = -2yy' \quad y(0) = 0 \quad y'(0) = \lambda$$

$$\begin{aligned} z'' &= \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} z(x, \lambda) + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y'} z'(x, \lambda) \\ &= -2y'z - 2yz' \quad z(0) = 0 \quad z'(0) = 1 \end{aligned}$$

Discretising we let $y_1 = y$, $y_2 = y'$, $y_3 = z$ and $y_4 = z'$.

$$\begin{aligned} y_1' &= y_2 & : & \quad y_1(0) = 0 \\ y_2' &= -2y_1y_2 & : & \quad y_2(0) = \lambda_k \\ y_3' &= y_4 & : & \quad y_3(0) = 0 \\ y_4' &= -2y_3y_2 - 2y_1y_4 & : & \quad y_4(0) = 1 \end{aligned}$$

with

$$\lambda_k = \lambda_{k-1} - \frac{y_1(b) - \beta}{y_3(b)}$$

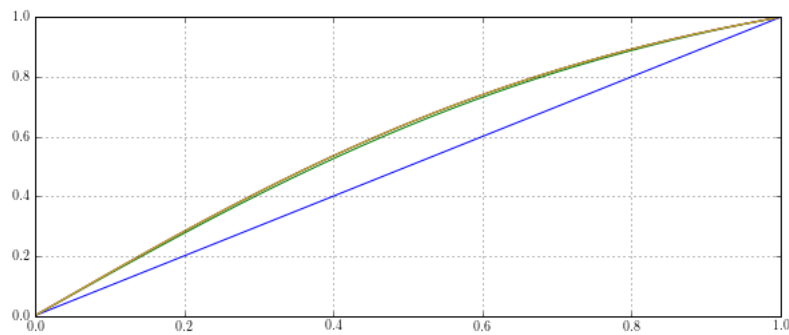
Then solve using a one step method. \diamond 

Figure 7.5.3: Python output: Nonlinear Shooting Method

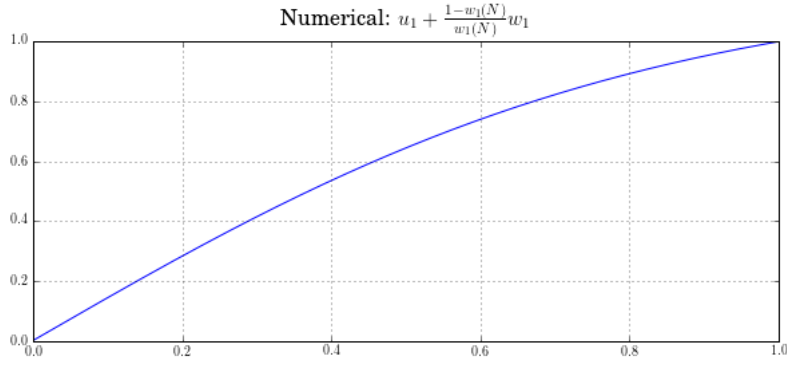
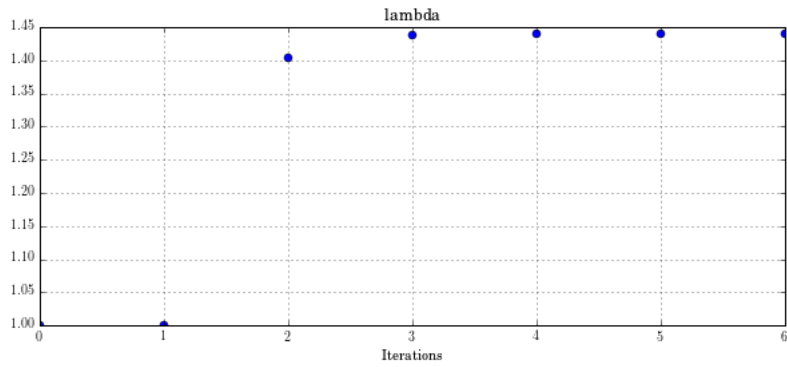


Figure 7.5.4: Python output: Nonlinear Shooting Method result

Figure 7.5.5: Python output: Nonlinear Shooting Method λ

7.6 FINITE DIFFERENCE METHOD

Each finite difference operator can be derived from Taylor expansion. Once again looking at a linear second order differential equation

$$y'' = p(x)y' + q(x)y + r(x)$$

on $[a, b]$ subject to boundary conditions

$$y(a) = \alpha \quad y(b) = \beta$$

As with all cases we divide the area into even spaced mesh points

$$x_0 = a, \quad x_N = b \quad x_i = x_0 + ih \quad h = \frac{b-a}{N}$$

We now replace the derivatives $y'(x)$ and $y''(x)$ with the centered difference approximations

$$y'(x) = \frac{1}{2h}(y(x_{i+1}) - y(x_{i-1})) - \frac{h^2}{12}y'''(\xi_i)$$

$$y''(x) = \frac{1}{h^2}(y(x_{i+1}) - 2y(x_i) + y(x_{i-1})) - \frac{h^2}{6}y^4(\mu_i)$$

for some $x_{i-1} \leq \xi_i \mu_i \leq x_{i+1}$ for $i=1, \dots, N-1$.

We now have the equation

$$\frac{1}{h^2}(y(x_{i+1}) - 2y(x_i) + y(x_{i-1})) = p(x_i)\frac{1}{2h}(y(x_{i+1}) - y(x_{i-1})) + q(x_i)y(x_i) + r(x_i)$$

This is rearranged such that we have all the unknown together,

$$\left(1 + \frac{hp(x_i)}{2}\right)y(x_{i-1}) - (2 + h^2q(x_i))y(x_i) + \left(1 - \frac{hp(x_i)}{2}\right)y(x_{i+1}) = h^2r(x_i)$$

for $i = 1, \dots, N-1$.

Since the values of $p(x_i)$, $q(x_i)$ and $r(x_i)$ are known it represents a linear algebraic equation involving $y(x_{i-1})$, $y(x_i)$, $y(x_{i+1})$.

This produces a system of $N-1$ linear equations with $N-1$ unknowns $y(x_1), \dots, y(x_{N-1})$.

The first equation corresponding to $i = 1$ simplifies to

$$-(2 + h^2q(x_1))y(x_1) + \left(1 - \frac{hp(x_1)}{2}\right)y(x_2) = h^2r(x_1) - \left(1 + \frac{hp(x_1)}{2}\right)\alpha$$

because of the boundary condition $y(a) = \alpha$, and for $i = N-1$

$$\left(1 + \frac{hp(x_{N-1})}{2}\right)y(x_{N-2}) - (2 + h^2q(x_{N-1}))y(x_{N-1}) = h^2r(x_{N-1}) - \left(1 - \frac{hp(x_{N-1})}{2}\right)\beta$$

because $y(b) = \beta$.

The values of y_i , ($i = 1, \dots, N-1$) can therefore be found by solving the tridiagonal system

$$A\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{b}$$

where

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} -(2 + h^2q(x_1)) & \left(1 - \frac{hp(x_1)}{2}\right) & 0 & \cdot & 0 \\ \left(1 + \frac{hp(x_2)}{2}\right) & -(2 + h^2q(x_2)) & \left(1 - \frac{hp(x_2)}{2}\right) & 0 & \cdot \\ 0 & \cdot & \cdot & 0 & 0 \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & 0 & \left(1 + \frac{hp(x_{N-2})}{2}\right) & -(2 + h^2q(x_{N-2})) & \left(1 - \frac{hp(x_{N-2})}{2}\right) \\ \cdot & 0 & 0 & \left(1 + \frac{hp(x_{N-1})}{2}\right) & -(2 + h^2q(x_{N-1})) \end{bmatrix}$$

$$y = \begin{pmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \\ \vdots \\ y_{N-2} \\ y_{N-1} \end{pmatrix} \quad b = \begin{pmatrix} h^2 r_1 - \left(1 + \frac{hp_1}{2}\right) \alpha \\ h^2 r_2 \\ \vdots \\ h^2 r_{N-2} \\ h^2 r_{N-1} - \left(1 - \frac{hp_1}{2}\right) \beta \end{pmatrix}$$

Example 36

Looking at the simple case

$$\frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} = 4y \quad y(0) = 1.1752 \quad y(1) = 10.0179$$

Our difference equation is

$$\frac{1}{h^2} (y(x_{i+1}) - 2y(x_i) + y(x_{i-1}))) = 4y(x_i) \quad i = 1, \dots, N-1$$

dividing $[0, 1]$ into 4 subintervals we have $h = \frac{1-0}{4}$

$$x_i = x_0 + ih = 0 + i(0.25)$$

In this simple example $q(x) = 4$, $p(x) = 0$ and $r(x) = 0$. Rearranging the equation we have

$$\frac{1}{h^2} (y(x_{i+1})) - \left(\frac{2}{h^2} + 4\right) y(x_i) + \frac{1}{h^2} (y(x_{i-1})) = 0$$

multiplying across by h^2

$$y(x_{i+1}) - (2 + 4h^2)y(x_i) + (y(x_{i-1})) = 0$$

with the boundary conditions $y(x_0) = 1.1752$ and $y(x_4) = 10.0179$. Our equations are of the form

$$y(x_2) - 2.25y(x_1) = -1.1752$$

$$y(x_3) - 2.25y(x_2) + y(x_1) = 0$$

$$-2.25y(x_3) + y(x_2) = -10.0179$$

Putting this into matrix form

$$\begin{pmatrix} -2.25 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -2.25 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & -2.25 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \\ y_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1.1752 \\ 0 \\ -10.0179 \end{pmatrix}$$

| x | y | Exact $\sinh(2x + 1)$ |
|------|---------|-----------------------|
| 0 | 1.1752 | 1.1752 |
| 0.25 | 2.1467 | 2.1293 |
| 0.5 | 3.6549 | 3.6269 |
| 0.75 | 6.0768 | 6.0502 |
| 1.0 | 10.0179 | 10.0179 |

◇

Example 37

Looking at a more involved boundary value problem

$$y'' = xy' - 3y + e^x \quad y(0) = 1 \quad y(1) = 2$$

Let $N=5$ then $h = \frac{1-0}{5} = 0.2$. The difference equation is of the form

$$\frac{1}{h^2}(y(x_{i+1}) - 2y(x_i) + y(x_{i-1}))) = x_i \frac{1}{2h}(y(x_{i+1}) - y(x_{i-1}))) - 3y(x_i) + e^{x_i}$$

Re arranging and putting $h = 0.2$

$$(1 + \frac{0.2(x_i)}{2})y(x_{i-1}) - (1.88)y(x_i) + (1 - 0.2(x_i)2)y(x_{i+1}) = 0.04e^{x_i}$$

In matrix form this is

$$\begin{pmatrix} -1.88 & 0.98 & 0 & 0 \\ 1.04 & -1.88 & 0.96 & 0 \\ 0 & 1.06 & -1.88 & 0.94 \\ 0 & 0 & 1.08 & -1.88 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \\ y_3 \\ y_4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0.04e^{0.2} - 1.02 \\ 0.04e^{0.4} \\ 0.04e^{0.6} \\ 0.04e^{0.8} - 1.84 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$y_1 = 1.4651, y_2 = 1.8196, y_3 = 2.0283 \text{ and } y_4 = 2.1023.$$

SOLVING A TRI-DIAGONAL SYSTEM

To solve a tri-diagonal system we can use the method discussed in the approximation theory.

Part II

NUMERICAL SOLUTIONS TO PARTIAL
DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS

PARTIAL DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS

8.1 INTRODUCTION

Partial Differential Equations (PDE), occur frequently in maths, natural science and engineering.

PDE's are problems involving rates of change of functions of several variables.

The following involve 2 independent variables:

$$-\nabla^2 u = -\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} - \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} = f(x, y) \quad \text{Poisson Eqn}$$

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + v \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = 0 \quad \text{Advection Eqn}$$

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} - D \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} = 0 \quad \text{Heat Eqn}$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} - c^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} = 0 \quad \text{Wave Equation}$$

Here v, D, c are real positive constants. In these cases x, y are the space coordinates and t, x are often viewed as time and space coordinates, respectively.

These are only examples and do not cover all cases. In real occurrences PDE's usually have 3 or 4 variables.

8.2 PDE CLASSIFICATION

PDE's in two independent variables x and y have the form

$$\Phi \left(x, y, u, \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}, \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}, \dots \right) = 0$$

where the symbol Φ stands for some functional relationship.

As we saw with BVP this is too general a case so we must define new classes of the general PDE.

Definition The order of a PDE is the order of the highest derivative that appears.

ie Poisson is 2nd order, Advection eqn is 1st order. \circ

Most of the mathematical theory of PDE's concerns linear equations of first or second order.

After order and linearity (linear or non-linear), the most important classification scheme for PDE's involves geometry.

Introducing the ideas with an example:

Example 38

$$\alpha(t, x) \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + \beta \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = \gamma(t, x) \quad (41)$$

A solution $u(t, x)$ to this PDE defines a surface $\{t, x, u(t, x)\}$ lying over some region of the (t, x) -plane.

Consider any smooth path in the (t, x) -plane lying below the solution $\{t, x, u(t, x)\}$.

Such a path has a parameterization $(t(s), x(s))$ where the parameter s measures progress along the path.

What is the rate of change $\frac{du}{ds}$ of the solution as we travel along the path $(t(s), x(s))$.

The chain rule provides the answer

$$\frac{dt}{ds} \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + \frac{dx}{ds} \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = \frac{du}{ds} \quad (42)$$

Equation (42) holds for an arbitrary smooth path in the (t, x) -plane. Restricting attention to a specific family of paths leads to a useful observation: When

$$\frac{dt}{ds} = \alpha(t, x) \text{ and } \frac{dx}{ds} = \beta(t, x) \quad (43)$$

the simultaneous validity of (41) and (42) requires that

$$\frac{du}{ds} = \gamma(t, x). \quad (44)$$

Equation (44) defines a family of curves $(t(s), x(s))$ called characteristic curves in the plane (t, x) .

Equation (44) is an ode called the characteristic equation that the solution must satisfy along only the characteristic curve.

Thus the original PDE collapses to an ODE along the characteristic curves. Characteristic curves are paths along which information about the solution to the PDE propagates from points where the initial value or boundary values are known. \diamond

Consider a second order PDE having the form

$$\alpha(x, y) \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \beta(x, y) \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y} + \gamma(x, y) \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} = \Psi(x, y, u, \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}) \quad (45)$$

Along an arbitrary smooth curve $(x(s), y(s))$ in the (x, y) -plane, the gradient $\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}\right)$ of the solution varies according to the chain rule:

$$\frac{dx}{ds} \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y \partial x} + \frac{dy}{ds} \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y \partial x} = \frac{d}{ds} \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right)$$

$$\frac{dx}{ds} \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y} + \frac{dy}{ds} \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} = \frac{d}{ds} \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \right)$$

if the solution $u(x, y)$ is continuously differentiable then these relationships together with the original PDE yield the following system:

$$\begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta & \gamma \\ \frac{dx}{ds} & \frac{dy}{ds} & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{dx}{ds} & \frac{dy}{ds} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} \\ \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y} \\ \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \Psi \\ \frac{d}{ds} \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right) \\ \frac{d}{ds} \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \right) \end{pmatrix} \quad (46)$$

By analogy with the first order case we determine the characteristic curves but where the PDE is redundant with the chain rule. This occurs when the determinant of the matrix in (46) vanishes that is when

$$\alpha \left(\frac{dy}{ds} \right)^2 - \beta \left(\frac{dy}{ds} \right) \left(\frac{dx}{ds} \right) + \gamma \left(\frac{dx}{ds} \right)^2 = 0$$

eliminating the parameter s reduces this equation to the equivalent condition

$$\alpha \left(\frac{dy}{dx} \right)^2 - \beta \left(\frac{dy}{dx} \right) + \gamma = 0$$

Formally solving this quadratic for $\frac{dy}{dx}$, we find

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{\beta \pm \sqrt{\beta^2 - 4\alpha\gamma}}{2\alpha}$$

This pair of ODE's determine the characteristic curves. From this equation we divide into 3 classes each defined with respect to $\beta^2 - 4\alpha\gamma$.

1. **HYPERBOLIC**

$\beta^2 - 4\alpha\gamma > 0$ This gives two families of real characteristic curves.

2. **PARABOLIC**

$\beta^2 - 4\alpha\gamma = 0$ This gives exactly one family of real characteristic curves.

3. **ELLIPTIC**

$\beta^2 - 4\alpha\gamma < 0$ This gives no real characteristic equations.

Example 39

The wave equation

$$c^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} - \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} = 0$$

now equating this with our formula for the characteristics we have

$$\frac{dt}{dx} = \frac{0 \pm \sqrt{0 + 4c^2}}{2} = \pm c$$

this implies that the characteristics are $x + ct = \text{const}$ and $x - ct = \text{const}$. This means that the effects travel along the characteristics.

Laplace equation

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} = 0$$

from this we have $-4(1)(1) < 0$ which implies it is elliptic.

This means that information at one point affects all other points.

Heat equation

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} - \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = 0$$

from this we have $\beta^2 - 4\alpha\gamma = 0$ this implies that the equation is parabolic thus we have

$$\frac{\partial t}{\partial x} = 0$$

◇

We can also state that hyperbolic and parabolic are Boundary value problems and initial value problems. While, elliptic problems are boundary value problems.

DIFFERENCE OPERATORS

Through out this chapter we will use U to denote the exact solution and w to denote the numerical (approximate) solution.

1-D difference operators

$$\begin{aligned} D^+ U_i &= \frac{U_{i+1} - U_i}{h_{i+1}} && \text{Forward} \\ D^- U_i &= \frac{U_i - U_{i-1}}{h_i} && \text{Backward} \\ D^0 U_i &= \frac{U_{i+1} - U_{i-1}}{x_{i+1} - x_{i-1}} && \text{Centered} \end{aligned}$$

For 2-D Differences Schemes is similar when dealing with the x-direction we hold the y-direction constant and then dealing with the y-direction hold the x-direction constant.

$$\begin{aligned} D_x^+ U_{ij} &= \frac{U_{i+1j} - U_{ij}}{x_{i+1} - x_i} && \text{Forward in the x-direction} \\ D_y^+ U_{ij} &= \frac{U_{ij+1} - U_{ij}}{y_{i+1} - y_i} && \text{Forward in the y-direction} \\ D_x^- U_{ij} &= \frac{U_{ij} - U_{i-1j}}{x_i - x_{i-1}} && \text{Backward in the x direction} \\ D_y^- U_{ij} &= \frac{U_{ij} - U_{ij-1}}{y_i - y_{i-1}} && \text{Backward in the y direction} \\ D_x^0 U_{ij} &= \frac{U_{i+1j} - U_{i-1j}}{x_{i+1} - x_{i-1}} && \text{Centered in the x direction} \\ D_y^0 U_{ij} &= \frac{U_{ij+1} - U_{ij-1}}{y_{i+1} - y_{i-1}} && \text{Centered in the y direction} \end{aligned}$$

Second derivatives

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_x^2 U_{ij} &= \frac{2}{x_{i+1} - x_{i-1}} \left(\frac{U_{i+1j} - U_{ij}}{x_{i+1} - x_i} - \frac{U_{ij} - U_{i-1j}}{x_i - x_{i-1}} \right) && \text{Centered in x direction} \\ \delta_y^2 U_{ij} &= \frac{2}{y_{i+1} - y_{i-1}} \left(\frac{U_{ij+1} - U_{ij}}{y_{i+1} - y_i} - \frac{U_{ij} - U_{ij-1}}{y_i - y_{i-1}} \right) && \text{Centered in y direction} \end{aligned}$$

PARABOLIC EQUATIONS

We will look at the Heat equation as our sample parabolic equation.

$$\frac{\partial U}{\partial T} = K \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial X^2} \text{ on } \Omega$$

and

$$U = g(x, y) \text{ on the boundary } \delta\Omega$$

this can be transformed without loss of generality by a non-dimensional transformation to

$$\frac{\partial U}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial x^2} \quad (47)$$

10.1 AN EXPLICIT METHOD FOR THE HEAT EQN

The explicit Backwards Time Centered Space (BTCS) equation difference equation of the differential equation (47) is

$$\frac{w_{ij+1} - w_{ij}}{t_{j+1} - t_j} = \frac{w_{i+1j} - 2w_{ij} + w_{i-1j}}{h^2}, \quad (48)$$

$$\frac{w_{ij+1} - w_{ij}}{k} = \frac{w_{i+1j} - 2w_{ij} + w_{i-1j}}{h^2}$$

when approaching this we have divided up the area into two uniform meshes one in the x direction and the other in the t-direction. We define $t_j = jk$ where k is the step size in the time direction.

We define $x_i = ih$ where h is the step size in the space direction.

w_{ij} denotes the numerical approximation of U at (x_i, t_j) .

Rearranging the equation we get

$$w_{ij+1} = rw_{i-1j} + (1 - 2r)w_{ij} + rw_{i+1j} \quad (49)$$

where $r = \frac{k}{h^2}$.

This gives the formula for the unknown term w_{ij+1} at the $(ij + 1)$ mesh points in terms of terms along the j th time row.

Hence we can calculate the unknown pivotal values of w along the

first row $t = k$ or $j = 1$ in terms of the known boundary conditions. This can be written in matrix form

$$\mathbf{w}_{j+1} = A\mathbf{w}_j + \mathbf{b}_j$$

for which A is

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1-2r & r & 0 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ r & 1-2r & r & 0 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ 0 & r & 1-2r & r & 0 & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & r & 1-2r & r \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & r & 1-2r \end{pmatrix}$$

where $r = \frac{k}{h_x^2} > 0$, \mathbf{w}_j is

$$\begin{pmatrix} w_{1j} \\ w_{2j} \\ \cdot \\ w_{N-2j} \\ w_{N-1j} \end{pmatrix}$$

and \mathbf{b}_j is

$$\begin{pmatrix} rw_{0j} \\ 0 \\ \cdot \\ 0 \\ rw_{Nj} \end{pmatrix}.$$

It is assumed that the boundary values w_{0j} and w_{Nj} are known for $j = 1, 2, \dots$, and w_{i0} is the initial condition.

10.1.1 Example explicit method for the Heat Equation

In this case we look at a rod of unit length with each end in ice. The rod is heat insulated along its length so that temp changes occur through heat conduction along its length and heat transfer at its ends, where w denotes temp.

Simple case

Given that the ends of the rod are kept in contact with ice and the initial temp distribution is non dimensional form is

1. $U = 2x$ for $0 \leq x \leq \frac{1}{2}$,
2. $U = 2(1-x)$ for $\frac{1}{2} \leq x \leq 1$.

In other words we are seeking a numerical solution of

$$\frac{\partial U}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial x^2}$$

which satisfies

1. $U = 0$ at $x = 0$ for all $t > 0$ (the boundary condition)
2. $U = 2x$ for $0 \leq x \leq \frac{1}{2}$ for $t=0$ $U = 2(1 - x)$ for $\frac{1}{2} \leq x \leq 1$ for $t=0$ (the initial condition)

The problem is symmetric with respect to $x = 0.5$ so we need the solution only for $0 \leq x \leq \frac{1}{2}$

10.1.1.1 Explicit FTCS method for the Heat Equation with $r = \frac{1}{10}$

Let $h = \frac{1}{5}$ and $k = \frac{1}{250}$ so that $r = \frac{k}{h^2} = \frac{1}{10}$ difference equation (49) becomes

$$w_{ij+1} = \frac{1}{10}(w_{i-1j} + 8w_{ij} + w_{i+1j}).$$

This can be written in matrix form

$$\begin{pmatrix} w_{1j+1} \\ w_{2j+1} \\ w_{3j+1} \\ w_{4j+1} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0.8 & 0.1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0.1 & 0.8 & 0.1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.1 & 0.8 & 0.1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0.1 & 0.8 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} w_{1j} \\ w_{2j} \\ w_{3j} \\ w_{4j} \end{pmatrix}.$$

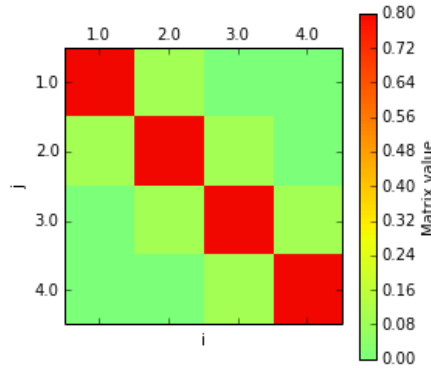


Figure 10.1.1: Graphical representation of the matrix A for $r = \frac{1}{10}$.

To solve for w_{21} we have

$$w_{21} = \frac{1}{10}(w_{10} + 8w_{20} + w_{30}) = \frac{1}{10}(0.4 + 8 * 0.8 + 0.8) = 0.76.$$

| j/x | 0 | 0.2 | 0.4 | 0.6 | 0.8 | 1.0 |
|-----------------|---|-----|------|------|-----|-----|
| 0 | 0 | 0.4 | 0.8 | 0.8 | 0.4 | 0.0 |
| $\frac{1}{250}$ | 0 | 0.4 | 0.76 | 0.76 | 0.4 | 0.0 |

Table 4: The explicit numerical solution w of the Heat Equation for $r = \frac{1}{10}$ for 1 time step.

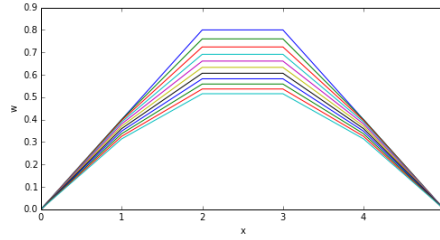


Figure 10.1.2: The explicit numerical solution w of the Heat Equation for $r = \frac{1}{10}$ for 10 time steps each represented by a different line.

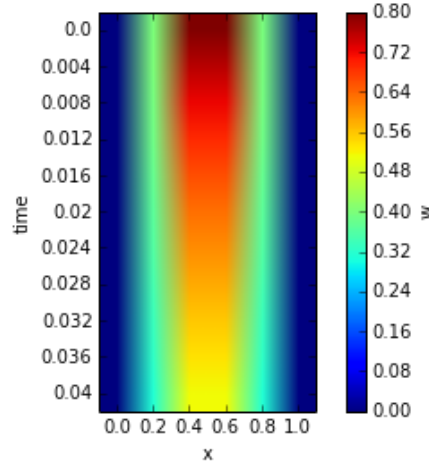


Figure 10.1.3: The colorplot of The explicit numerical solution w of the Heat Equation for $r = \frac{1}{10}$.

10.1.1.2 Explicit FTCS method for the Heat Equation with $r = \frac{1}{2}$

Let $h = \frac{1}{5}$ and $k = \frac{1}{50}$ so that $r = \frac{k}{h^2} = \frac{1}{2}$ difference equation (49) becomes

$$w_{ij+1} = \frac{1}{2}(w_{i-1j} + w_{i+1j}).$$

This can be written in matrix form

$$\begin{pmatrix} w_{1j+1} \\ w_{2j+1} \\ w_{3j+1} \\ w_{4j+1} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0.0 & 0.5 & 0 & 0 \\ 0.5 & 0.0 & 0.5 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.5 & 0.0 & 0.5 \\ 0 & 0 & 0.5 & 0.0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} w_{1j} \\ w_{2j} \\ w_{3j} \\ w_{4j} \end{pmatrix}.$$

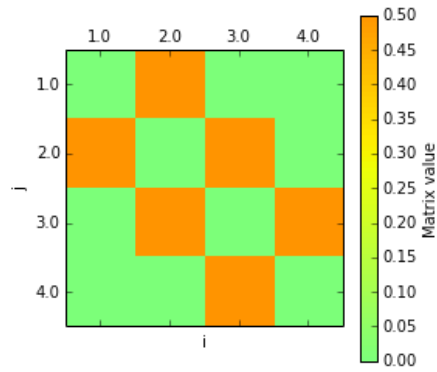


Figure 10.1.4: Graphical representation of the matrix A for $r = \frac{1}{2}$.

| t/x | 0 | 0.2 | 0.4 | 0.6 | 0.8 | 1.0 |
|----------------|---|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 0 | 0 | 0.4 | 0.8 | 0.8 | 0.4 | 0.0 |
| $\frac{1}{50}$ | 0 | 0.4 | 0.6 | 0.6 | 0.4 | 0.0 |

Table 5: The explicit numerical solution w of the Heat Equation for $r = \frac{1}{2}$ for 1 time step.

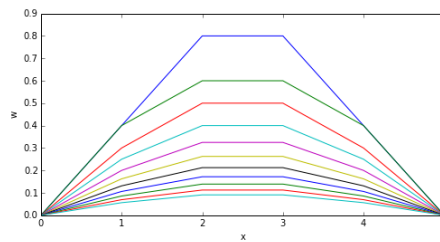


Figure 10.1.5: The explicit numerical solution w of the Heat Equation for $r = \frac{1}{2}$ for 10 time steps each represented by a different line.

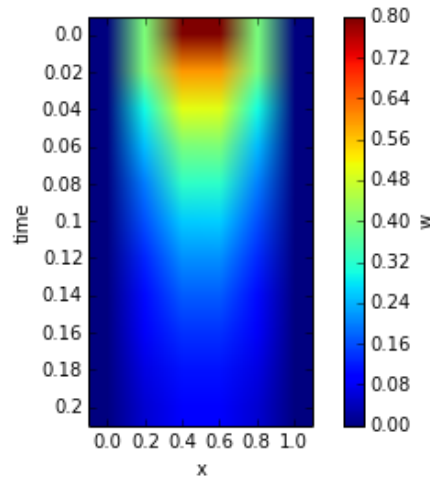


Figure 10.1.6: The colorplot of The explicit numerical solution w of the Heat Equation for $r = \frac{1}{2}$.

This method also gives an acceptable approximation to the solution of the PDE.

10.1.1.3 Explicit FTCS method for the Heat Equation with $r = 1$

Let $h = \frac{1}{5}$ and $k = \frac{1}{25}$ so that $r = \frac{k}{h^2} = 1$ difference equation (49) becomes

$$w_{ij+1} = w_{i-1j} - w_{ij} + w_{i+1j}.$$

This can be written in matrix form

$$\begin{pmatrix} w_{1j+1} \\ w_{2j+1} \\ w_{3j+1} \\ w_{4j+1} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1.0 & 1.0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1.0 & -1.0 & 1.0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1.0 & -1.0 & 1.0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1.0 & -1.0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} w_{1j} \\ w_{2j} \\ w_{3j} \\ w_{4j} \end{pmatrix}.$$

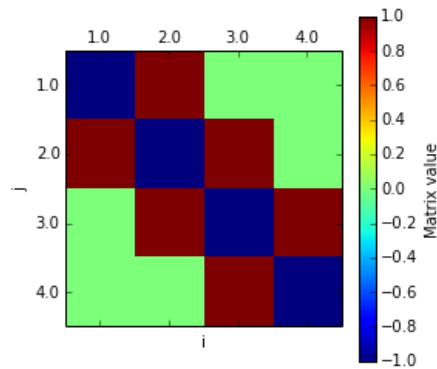


Figure 10.1.7: Graphical representation of the matrix A for $r = 1$.

| t/x | 0 | 0.2 | 0.4 | 0.6 | 0.8 | 1.0 |
|----------------|---|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 0 | 0 | 0.4 | 0.8 | 0.8 | 0.4 | 0.0 |
| $\frac{1}{25}$ | 0 | 0.4 | 0.4 | 0.4 | 0.4 | 0.0 |
| $\frac{2}{25}$ | 0 | 0.0 | 0.4 | 0.4 | 0.0 | 0.0 |
| $\frac{3}{25}$ | 0 | 0.4 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.4 | 0.0 |

Table 6: The explicit numerical solution w of the Heat Equation for $r = 1$ for 3 time steps.

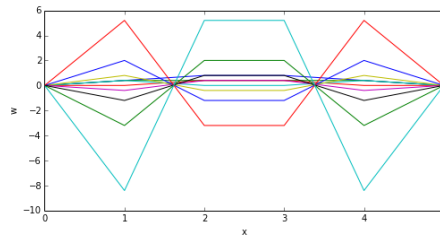


Figure 10.1.8: The explicit numerical solution w of the Heat Equation for $r = 1$ for 10 time steps each represented by a different line.

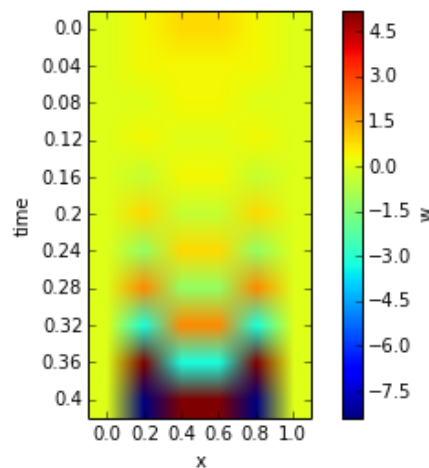


Figure 10.1.9: The colorplot of The explicit numerical solution w of the Heat Equation for $r = 1$.

Considered as a solution to the PDE this is meaningless although it is the correct solution of the difference equation with respect to the initial conditions and the boundary conditions.

10.2 AN IMPLICIT (FTCS) METHOD FOR THE HEAT EQN

The implicit Forward Time Centered Space (FTCS) equation difference equation of the differential equation (47) is

$$\frac{w_{ij+1} - w_{ij}}{k} = \frac{w_{i+1j+1} - 2w_{ij+1} + w_{i-1j+1}}{h^2} \quad (50)$$

when approaching this we have divided up the area into two uniform meshes one in the x direction and the other in the t -direction. We define $t_j = jk$ where k is the step size in the time direction.

We define $x_i = ih$ where h is the step size in the space direction.

w_{ij} denotes the numerical approximation of U at (x_i, t_j) .

Rearranging the equation we get

$$-rw_{i-1j+1} + (1 + 2r)w_{ij+1} - rw_{i+1j+1} = w_{ij} \quad (51)$$

where $r = \frac{k}{h^2}$.

This gives the formula for the unknown term w_{ij+1} at the $(ij + 1)$ mesh points in terms of terms along the j th time row.

Hence we can calculate the unknown pivotal values of w along the first row $t = k$ or $j = 1$ in terms of the known boundary conditions.

This can be written in matrix from

$$A\mathbf{w}_{j+1} = \mathbf{w}_j + \mathbf{b}_j$$

for which A is

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1+2r & -r & 0 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ -r & 1+2r & -r & 0 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ 0 & -r & 1+2r & -r & 0 & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & -r & 1+2r & -r \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & -r & 1+2r \end{pmatrix}$$

where $r = \frac{k}{h_x^2} > 0$, \mathbf{w}_j is

$$\begin{pmatrix} w_{1j} \\ w_{2j} \\ \cdot \\ w_{N-2j} \\ w_{N-1j} \end{pmatrix}$$

and \mathbf{b}_j is

$$\begin{pmatrix} rw_{0j+1} \\ 0 \\ \cdot \\ 0 \\ rw_{Nj+1} \end{pmatrix}.$$

It is assumed that the boundary values w_{0j} and w_{Nj} are known for $j = 1, 2, \dots$, and w_{i0} is the initial condition.

10.2.1 Example implicit (FTCS) for the Heat Equation

In this case we look at a rod of unit length with each end in ice. The rod is heat insulated along its length so that temp changes occur through heat conduction along its length and heat transfer at its ends, where w denotes temp.

Simple case

Given that the ends of the rod are kept in contact with ice and the initial temp distribution is non dimensional form is

1. $U = 2x$ for $0 \leq x \leq \frac{1}{2}$
2. $U = 2(1 - x)$ for $\frac{1}{2} \leq x \leq 1$

In other words we are seeking a numerical solution of

$$\frac{\partial U}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial x^2}$$

which satisfies

1. $U = 0$ at $x = 0$ for all $t > 0$ (the boundary condition),
2. $U = 2x$ for $0 \leq x \leq \frac{1}{2}$ for $t = 0$, $U = 2(1 - x)$ for $\frac{1}{2} \leq x \leq 1$ for $t = 0$ (the initial condition).

10.2.1.1 Implicit (FTCS) method for the Heat Equation $r = \frac{1}{10}$

Let $h = \frac{1}{5}$ and $k = \frac{1}{250}$ so that $r = \frac{k}{h^2} = \frac{1}{10}$ difference equation (49) becomes

$$\frac{1}{10}(-w_{i-1j+1} + (12)w_{ij+1} - w_{i+1j+1}) = w_{ij}$$

This can be written in matrix form

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1.2 & -0.1 & 0 & 0 \\ -0.1 & 1.2 & -0.1 & 0 \\ 0 & -0.1 & 1.2 & -0.1 \\ 0 & 0 & -0.1 & 1.2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} w_{1j+1} \\ w_{2j+1} \\ w_{3j+1} \\ w_{4j+1} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} w_{1j} \\ w_{2j} \\ w_{3j} \\ w_{4j} \end{pmatrix}.$$

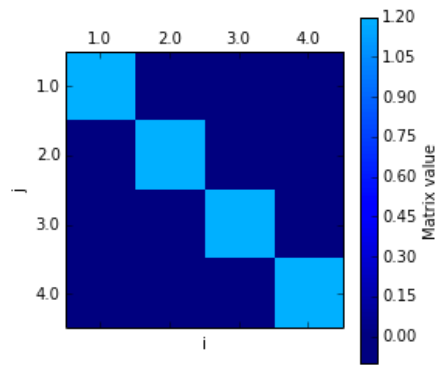


Figure 10.2.1: Graphical representation of the matrix A for $r = \frac{1}{10}$.

To solve we need to invert the matrix, to get

$$\mathbf{w}_{j+1} = A^{-1}(\mathbf{w}_j + \mathbf{b}_j)$$

| j/x | 0 | 0.2 | 0.4 | 0.6 | 0.8 | 1.0 |
|-----------------|----|------------|------------|------------|------------|-----|
| 0 | 0 | 0.4 | 0.8 | 0.8 | 0.4 | 0.0 |
| $\frac{1}{250}$ | 0. | 0.39694656 | 0.76335878 | 0.76335878 | 0.39694656 | 0. |

Table 7: The implicit numerical solution w of the Heat Equation for $r = \frac{1}{10}$ for 1 time step.

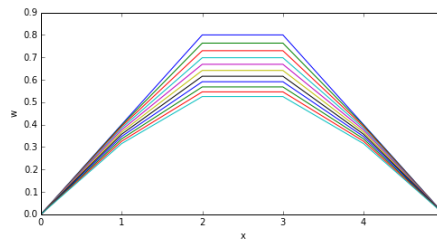


Figure 10.2.2: The implicit numerical solution w of the Heat Equation for $r = \frac{1}{10}$ for 10 time steps each represented by a different line.

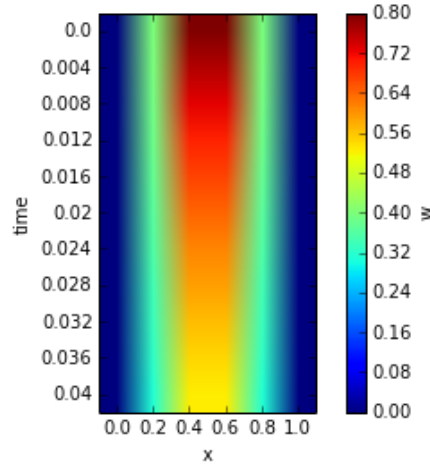


Figure 10.2.3: The colorplot of The implicit numerical solution w of the Heat Equation for $r = \frac{1}{10}$.

10.2.1.2 Implicit (FTCS) method for the Heat Equation for $r = \frac{1}{2}$

Let $h = \frac{1}{5}$ and $k = \frac{1}{50}$ so that $r = \frac{k}{h^2} = \frac{1}{2}$ difference equation (49) becomes

$$\frac{1}{2}(-w_{i-1j+1} + (4)w_{ij+1} - w_{i+1j+1}) = w_{ij}$$

This can be written in matrix form

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & -0.5 & 0 & 0 \\ -0.5 & 2 & -0.5 & 0 \\ 0 & -0.5 & 2 & -0.5 \\ 0 & 0 & -0.5 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} w_{1j+1} \\ w_{2j+1} \\ w_{3j+1} \\ w_{4j+1} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} w_{1j} \\ w_{2j} \\ w_{3j} \\ w_{4j} \end{pmatrix}.$$

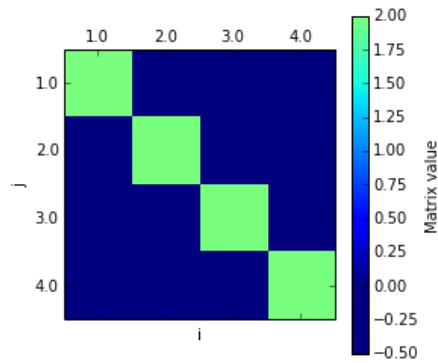


Figure 10.2.4: Graphical representation of the matrix A for $r = \frac{1}{2}$

| t/x | 0 | 0.2 | 0.4 | 0.6 | 0.8 | 1.0 |
|----------------|----|------------|------------|------------|------------|-----|
| 0 | 0 | 0.4 | 0.8 | 0.8 | 0.4 | 0.0 |
| $\frac{1}{50}$ | 0. | 0.36363636 | 0.65454545 | 0.65454545 | 0.36363636 | 0. |

Table 8: The implicit numerical solution w of the Heat Equation for $r = \frac{1}{2}$ for 1 time step

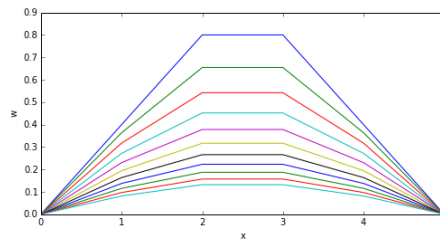


Figure 10.2.5: The implicit numerical solution w of the Heat Equation for $r = \frac{1}{2}$ for 10 time steps each represented by a different line

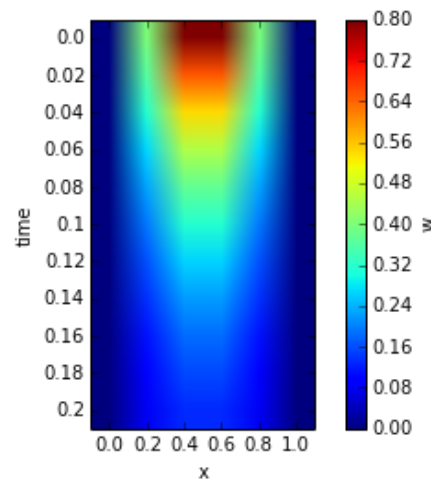


Figure 10.2.6: The colorplot of the implicit numerical solution w of the Heat Equation for $r = \frac{1}{2}$.

This method also gives an acceptable approximation to the solution of the PDE.

10.2.1.3 Implicit (FTCS) method for the Heat Equation for $r = 1$

Let $h = \frac{1}{5}$ and $k = \frac{1}{25}$ so that $r = \frac{k}{h^2} = 1$ difference equation (49) becomes

$$(-w_{i-1j+1} + (3)w_{ij+1} - w_{i+1j+1}) = w_{ij}$$

This can be written in matrix form

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 3 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 3 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} w_{1j+1} \\ w_{2j+1} \\ w_{3j+1} \\ w_{4j+1} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} w_{1j} \\ w_{2j} \\ w_{3j} \\ w_{4j} \end{pmatrix}.$$

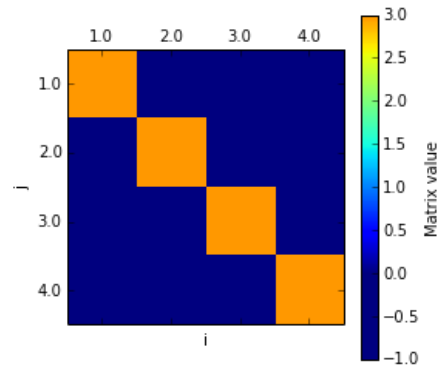


Figure 10.2.7: Graphical representation of the matrix A for $r = 1$

| t/x | 0 | 0.2 | 0.4 | 0.6 | 0.8 | 1.0 |
|----------------|----|-------|-------|-------|-------|-----|
| 0 | 0 | 0.4 | 0.8 | 0.8 | 0.4 | 0.0 |
| $\frac{1}{25}$ | 0. | 0.32 | 0.56 | 0.56 | 0.32 | 0. |
| $\frac{2}{25}$ | 0. | 0.24 | 0.4 | 0.4 | 0.24 | 0. |
| $\frac{3}{25}$ | 0. | 0.176 | 0.288 | 0.288 | 0.176 | 0. |

Table 9: The implicit numerical solution w of the Heat Equation for $r = 1$ for 3 time step

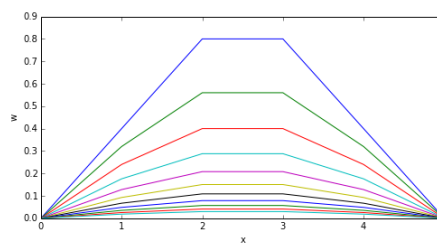


Figure 10.2.8: The implicit numerical solution w of the Heat Equation for $r = 1$ for 10 time steps each represented by a different line

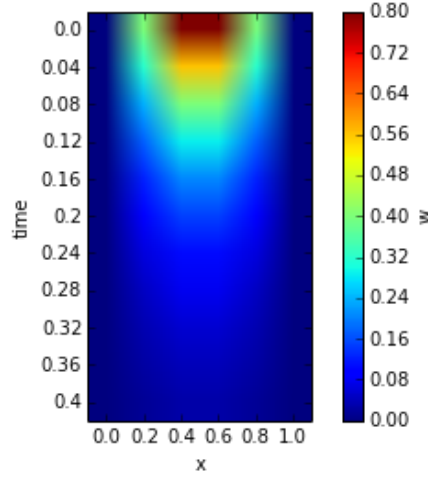


Figure 10.2.9: The colorplot of the implicit numerical solution w of the Heat Equation for $r = 1$.

10.3 CRANK NICHOLSON IMPLICIT METHOD

Since the implicit method requires that $k \leq \frac{1}{2}h^2$ a new method was needed which would work for all finite values of r .

They considered the partial differential equation as being satisfied at the midpoint $\{ih, (j + \frac{1}{2})k\}$ and replace $\frac{\delta^2 U}{\delta x^2}$ by the mean of its finite difference approximations at the j th and $(j+1)$ th time levels. In other words they approximated the equation

$$\left(\frac{\delta U}{\delta t}\right)_{i,j+\frac{1}{2}} = \left(\frac{\delta^2 U}{\delta x^2}\right)_{i,j+\frac{1}{2}}$$

by

$$\frac{w_{i,j+1} - w_{ij}}{k} = \frac{1}{2} \left\{ \frac{w_{i+1,j+1} - 2w_{ij+1} + w_{i-1,j+1}}{h^2} + \frac{w_{i+1,j} - 2w_{ij} + w_{i-1,j}}{h^2} \right\}$$

giving

$$-rw_{i-1,j+1} + (2 + 2r)w_{ij+1} - rw_{i+1,j+1} = rw_{i-1,j} + (2 - 2r)w_{ij} + rw_{i+1,j} \quad (52)$$

with $r = \frac{k}{h^2}$.

In general the LHS contains 3 unknowns and the RHS 3 known pivotal values.

If there are N intervals mesh points along each row then for $j=0$ and $i=1, \dots, N$ it gives N simultaneous equations for N unknown pivotal values along the first row.

Which can be described in matrix form

$$B\mathbf{w}_{j+1} = C\mathbf{w}_j + \mathbf{b}_j$$

as

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 2+2r & -r & 0 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ -r & 2+2r & -r & 0 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ 0 & -r & 2+2r & -r & 0 & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & -r & 2+2r & -r \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & -r & 2+2r \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} w_{1j+1} \\ w_{2j+1} \\ \cdot \\ \cdot \\ w_{N-2j+1} \\ w_{N-1j+1} \end{pmatrix} + \mathbf{b}_j$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 2-2r & r & 0 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ r & 2-2r & r & 0 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ 0 & r & 2-2r & r & 0 & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & r & 2-2r & r \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & r & 2-2r \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} w_{1j} \\ w_{2j} \\ \cdot \\ \cdot \\ w_{N-2j} \\ w_{N-1j} \end{pmatrix} + \mathbf{b}_j$$

where \mathbf{b}_j is a vector of known boundary conditions.

$$\mathbf{b}_j = \begin{pmatrix} r(w_{0j} + w_{0j+1}) \\ 0 \\ \cdot \\ \cdot \\ 0 \\ r(w_{Nj} + w_{Nj+1}) \end{pmatrix} \quad (53)$$

10.3.1 Example Crank-Nicholson solution of the Heat Equation

In this case we look at a rod of unit length with each end in ice. The rod is heat insulated along its length so that temp changes occur through heat conduction along its length and heat transfer at its ends, where w denotes temp.

Simple case

Given that the ends of the rod are kept in contact with ice and the initial temp distribution is non dimensional form is

1. $U = 2x$ for $0 \leq x \leq \frac{1}{2}$
2. $U = 2(1-x)$ for $\frac{1}{2} \leq x \leq 1$

In other words we are seeking a numerical solution of

$$\frac{\partial U}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial x^2}$$

which satisfies

1. $U = 0$ at $x = 0$ for all $t > 0$ (the boundary condition)
2. $U = 2x$ for $0 \leq x \leq \frac{1}{2}$ for $t = 0$ $U = 2(1-x)$ for $\frac{1}{2} \leq x \leq 1$ for $t = 0$ (the initial condition)

10.3.1.1 Crank-Nicholson method $r = \frac{1}{10}$

Let $h = \frac{1}{5}$ and $k = \frac{1}{250}$ so that $r = \frac{k}{h^2} = \frac{1}{10}$ difference equation (52) becomes

$$-0.1w_{i-1,j+1} + 2.2w_{i,j+1} - 0.1w_{i+1,j+1} = 0.1w_{i-1,j} + 1.8w_{i,j} + 0.1w_{i+1,j}$$

Let $j = 0$

$$\begin{array}{l|l} i = 1, j = 0 & -0.1w_{0,1} + 2.2w_{1,1} - 0.1w_{2,1} = 0.1w_{0,0} + 1.8w_{1,0} + 0.1w_{2,0} \\ i = 2, j = 0 & -0.1w_{1,1} + 2.2w_{2,1} - 0.1w_{3,1} = 0.1w_{1,0} + 1.8w_{2,0} + 0.1w_{3,0} \\ i = 3, j = 0 & -0.1w_{2,1} + 2.2w_{3,1} - 0.1w_{4,1} = 0.1w_{2,0} + 1.8w_{3,0} + 0.1w_{4,0} \\ i = 4, j = 0 & -0.1w_{3,1} + 2.2w_{4,1} - 0.1w_{5,1} = 0.1w_{3,0} + 1.8w_{4,0} + 0.1w_{5,0} \end{array}$$

In matrix form

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -0.5 & 0 & 0 \\ -0.5 & 3 & -0.5 & 0 \\ 0 & -0.5 & 3 & -0.5 \\ 0 & 0 & -0.5 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} w_{1,1} \\ w_{2,1} \\ w_{3,1} \\ w_{4,1} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0.5 & 0 & 0 \\ 0.5 & 1 & 0.5 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.5 & 1 & 0.5 \\ 0 & 0 & 0.5 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} w_{1,0} \\ w_{2,0} \\ w_{3,0} \\ w_{4,0} \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} w_{0,1} + w_{0,0} \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ w_{5,1} + w_{5,0} \end{pmatrix}$$

To solve we need to invert the matrix, to get

$$\mathbf{w}_{j+1} = A^{-1}(B\mathbf{w}_j + \mathbf{b}_j)$$

| j/x | 0 | 0.2 | 0.4 | 0.6 | 0.8 | 1.0 |
|-----------------|----|------------|------------|------------|------------|-----|
| 0 | 0 | 0.4 | 0.8 | 0.8 | 0.4 | 0.0 |
| $\frac{1}{250}$ | 0. | 0.39826464 | 0.76182213 | 0.76182213 | 0.39826464 | 0. |

Table 10: The Crank-Nicholson numerical solution w of the Heat Equation for $r = \frac{1}{10}$ for 1 time step

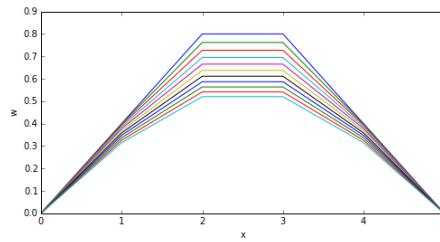


Figure 10.3.1: The Crank-Nicholson numerical solution w of the Heat Equation for $r = \frac{1}{10}$ for 10 time steps each represented by a different line

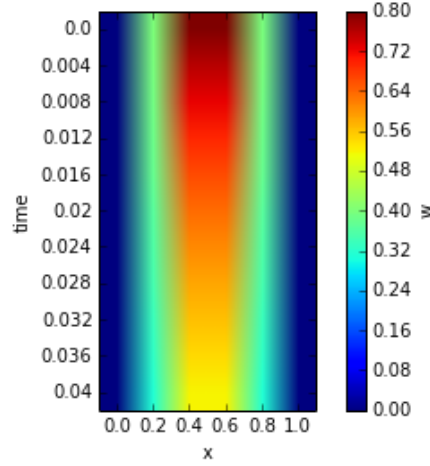


Figure 10.3.2: The colorplot of the Crank-Nicholson numerical solution w of the Heat Equation for $r = \frac{1}{10}$.

10.3.1.2 Crank-Nicholson method $r = \frac{1}{2}$

Let $h = \frac{1}{5}$ and $k = \frac{1}{50}$ so that $r = \frac{k}{h^2} = \frac{1}{2}$ difference equation (52) becomes

$$-0.5w_{i-1,j+1} + 3w_{i,j+1} - 0.5w_{i+1,j+1} = 0.5w_{i-1,j} + 1w_{i,j} + 0.5w_{i+1,j}$$

Let $j = 0$

$$\begin{array}{l|l} i=1, j=0 & -0.5w_{0,1} + 3w_{1,1} - 0.5w_{2,1} = 0.5w_{0,0} + 1w_{1,0} + 0.5w_{2,0} \\ i=2, j=0 & -0.5w_{1,1} + 3w_{2,1} - 0.5w_{3,1} = 0.5w_{1,0} + 1w_{2,0} + 0.5w_{3,0} \\ i=3, j=0 & -0.5w_{2,1} + 3w_{3,1} - 0.5w_{4,1} = 0.5w_{2,0} + 1w_{3,0} + 0.5w_{4,0} \\ i=4, j=0 & -0.5w_{3,1} + 3w_{4,1} - 0.5w_{5,1} = 0.5w_{3,0} + 1w_{4,0} + 0.5w_{5,0} \end{array}$$

In matrix form

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -0.5 & 0 & 0 \\ -0.5 & 3 & -0.5 & 0 \\ 0 & -0.5 & 3 & -0.5 \\ 0 & 0 & -0.5 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} w_{1,1} \\ w_{2,1} \\ w_{3,1} \\ w_{4,1} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0.5 & 0 & 0 \\ 0.5 & 1 & 0.5 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.5 & 1 & 0.5 \\ 0 & 0 & 0.5 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} w_{1,0} \\ w_{2,0} \\ w_{3,0} \\ w_{4,0} \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} w_{0,1} + w_{0,0} \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ w_{5,1} + w_{5,0} \end{pmatrix}$$

| t/x | 0 | 0.2 | 0.4 | 0.6 | 0.8 | 1.0 |
|----------------|----|------------|------------|------------|------------|-----|
| 0 | 0 | 0.4 | 0.8 | 0.8 | 0.4 | 0.0 |
| $\frac{1}{50}$ | 0. | 0.37241379 | 0.63448276 | 0.63448276 | 0.37241379 | 0. |

Table 11: The Crank-Nicholson numerical solution w of the Heat Equation for $r = \frac{1}{2}$ for 1 time step

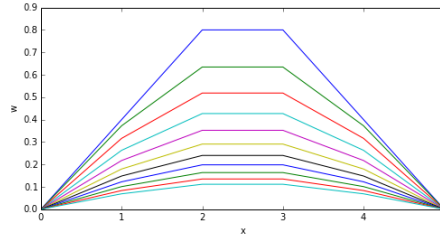


Figure 10.3.3: The Crank-Nicholson numerical solution w of the Heat Equation for $r = \frac{1}{2}$ for 10 time steps each represented by a different line

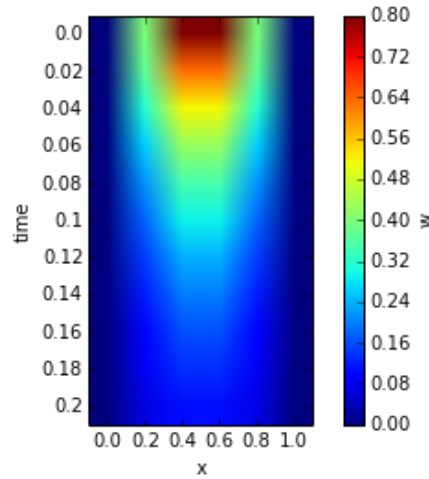


Figure 10.3.4: The colorplot of the Crank-Nicholson numerical solution w of the Heat Equation for $r = \frac{1}{2}$.

This method also gives an good approximation to the solution of the PDE.

10.3.1.3 Crank-Nicholson method for the Heat Equation with $r = 1$

Let $h = \frac{1}{5}$ and $k = \frac{1}{25}$ so that $r = \frac{k}{h^2} = 1$ difference equation (52) becomes

$$-w_{i-1,j+1} + 4w_{i,j+1} - w_{i+1,j+1} = w_{i-1,j} + 0w_{i,j} + w_{i+1,j}$$

Let $j = 0$

$$\begin{array}{l|l} i = 1, j = 0 & -w_{0,1} + 4w_{1,1} - w_{2,1} = w_{0,0} + 0w_{1,0} + w_{2,0} \\ i = 2, j = 0 & -w_{1,1} + 4w_{2,1} - w_{3,1} = w_{1,0} + 0w_{2,0} + w_{3,0} \\ i = 3, j = 0 & -w_{2,1} + 4w_{3,1} - w_{4,1} = w_{2,0} + 0w_{3,0} + w_{4,0} \\ i = 4, j = 0 & -w_{3,1} + 4w_{4,1} - w_{5,1} = w_{3,0} + 0w_{4,0} + w_{5,0} \end{array}$$

In matrix form

$$\begin{pmatrix} 4 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 4 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 4 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} w_{1,1} \\ w_{2,1} \\ w_{3,1} \\ w_{4,1} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} w_{1,0} \\ w_{2,0} \\ w_{3,0} \\ w_{4,0} \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} w_{0,1} + w_{0,0} \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ w_{5,1} + w_{5,0} \end{pmatrix}$$

| t/x | 0 | 0.2 | 0.4 | 0.6 | 0.8 | 1.0 |
|----------------|----|------------|------------|------------|------------|-----|
| 0 | 0 | 0.4 | 0.8 | 0.8 | 0.4 | 0.0 |
| $\frac{1}{25}$ | 0. | 0.32727273 | 0.50909091 | 0.50909091 | 0.32727273 | 0. |
| $\frac{2}{25}$ | 0. | 0.21487603 | 0.35041322 | 0.35041322 | 0.21487603 | 0. |
| $\frac{3}{25}$ | 0. | 0.14695718 | 0.23741548 | 0.23741548 | 0.14695718 | 0. |

Table 12: The Crank-Nicholson numerical solution w of the Heat Equation for $r = 1$ for 3 time step

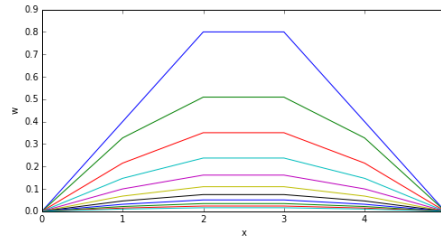


Figure 10.3.5: The Crank-Nicholson numerical solution w of the Heat Equation for $r = 1$ for 10 time steps each represented by a different line

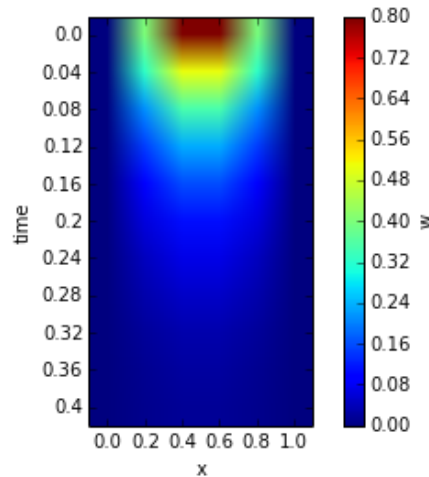


Figure 10.3.6: The colorplot of the Crank-Nicholson numerical solution w of the Heat Equation for $r = 1$.

10.4 THE THETA METHOD

The Theta Method is a generalization of the Crank-Nicholson method and expresses our partial differential equation as

$$\frac{w_{i,j+1} - w_{ij}}{k} = \left\{ \theta \left(\frac{w_{i+1,j+1} - 2w_{ij+1} + w_{i-1,j+1}}{h^2} \right) + (1 - \theta) \left(\frac{w_{i+1,j} - 2w_{ij} + w_{i-1,j}}{h^2} \right) \right\} \quad (54)$$

- when $\theta = 0$ we get the explicit scheme,
- when $\theta = \frac{1}{2}$ we get the Crank-Nicholson scheme,
- and $\theta = 1$ we get fully implicit backward finite difference method.

The equations are unconditionally valid for $\frac{1}{2} \leq \theta \leq 1$. For $0 \leq \theta < \frac{1}{2}$ we must have

$$r \leq \frac{1}{2(1 - 2\theta)}.$$

10.5 THE GENERAL MATRIX FORM

Let the solution domain of the PDE be the finite rectangle $0 \leq x \leq 1$ and $0 \leq t \leq T$ and subdivide it into a uniform rectangular mesh by the lines $x_i = ih$ for $i = 0$ to N and $t_j = jk$ for $j = 0$ to J it will be assumed that h is related to k by some relationship such as $k = rh$ or $k = rh^2$ with $r > 0$ and finite so that as $h \rightarrow 0$ as $k \rightarrow 0$.

Assume that the finite difference equation relating the mesh point values along the $(j + 1)$ th and j th row is

$$b_{i-1}w_{i-1,j+1} + b_iw_{ij+1} + b_{i+1}w_{i+1,j+1} = c_{i-1}w_{i-1,j} + c_iw_{ij} + c_{i+1}w_{i+1,j}$$

where the coefficients are constant. If the boundary values at $i = 0$ and N for $j > 0$ are known these $(N - 1)$ equations for $i = 1$ to $N - 1$ can be written in matrix form.

$$\begin{aligned} & \begin{pmatrix} b_1 & b_2 & 0 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 & 0 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ 0 & b_2 & b_3 & b_4 & 0 & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & b_{N-3} & b_{N-2} & b_{N-1} \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & b_{N-2} & b_{N-1} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} w_{1j+1} \\ w_{2j+1} \\ \cdot \\ \cdot \\ w_{N-2j+1} \\ w_{N-1j+1} \end{pmatrix} \\ = & \begin{pmatrix} c_1 & c_2 & 0 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ c_1 & c_2 & c_3 & 0 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ 0 & c_2 & c_3 & c_4 & 0 & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & c_{N-3} & c_{N-2} & c_{N-1} \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & c_{N-2} & c_{N-1} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} w_{1j} \\ w_{2j} \\ \cdot \\ \cdot \\ w_{N-2j} \\ w_{N-1j} \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} c_0w_{0j} - b_0w_{0j+1} \\ 0 \\ \cdot \\ \cdot \\ 0 \\ c_Nw_{Nj} - b_Nw_{Nj+1} \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Which can be written as

$$B\mathbf{w}_{j+1} = C\mathbf{w}_j + \mathbf{d}_j$$

Where B and C are of order $(N - 1)$ \mathbf{w}_j denotes a column vector and \mathbf{d}_j denotes a column vector of boundary values.

Hence

$$\mathbf{w}_{j+1} = B^{-1}C\mathbf{w}_j + B^{-1}\mathbf{d}_j.$$

Expressed in a more conventional manner as

$$\mathbf{w}_{j+1} = A\mathbf{w}_j + \mathbf{f}_j$$

Where $A = B^{-1}C$ and $\mathbf{f}_j = B^{-1}\mathbf{d}_j$.

10.6 DERIVATIVE BOUNDARY CONDITIONS

Boundary conditions expressed in terms of derivatives occur frequently.

10.6.1 Example Derivative Boundary Conditions

$$\frac{\partial U}{\partial x} = H(U - v_0) \quad \text{at } x = 0$$

where H is a positive constant and v_0 is the surrounding temp.

How do we deal with this type of boundary condition?

1. By using forward difference for $\frac{\partial U}{\partial x}$, we have

$$\frac{w_{1j} - w_{0j}}{h_x} = H(w_{0j} - v_0)$$

where $h_x = x_1 - x_0$. This gives us one extra equation for the temp w_{ij} .

2. If we wish to represent $\frac{\partial U}{\partial x}$ more accurately at $x=0$, we use a central difference formula. It is necessary to introduce a fictitious temp w_{-1j} at the external mesh points $(-h_x, jk)$. The temp w_{-1j} is unknown and needs another equation. This is obtained by assuming that the heat conduction equation is satisfied at the end points. The unknown w_{-1j} can be eliminated between these equations.

Solve for the equation

$$\frac{\partial U}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial x^2}$$

satisfying the initial condition

$$U = 1 \text{ for } 0 \leq x \leq 1 \text{ when } t = 0$$

and the boundary conditions

$$\frac{\partial U}{\partial x} = U \text{ at } x = 0 \text{ for all } t$$

$$\frac{\partial U}{\partial x} = -U \text{ at } x = 1 \text{ for all } t.$$

10.6.1.1 Example 1

Using forward difference approximation for the derivative boundary condition and the explicit method to approximate the PDE.

Our difference equation is,

$$\frac{w_{i,j+1} - w_{ij}}{k} = \frac{w_{i+1,j} - 2w_{ij} + w_{i-1,j}}{h^2}$$

$$w_{i,j+1} = w_{ij} + r(w_{i-1,j} - 2w_{ij} + w_{i+1,j}) \quad (55)$$

where $r = \frac{k}{h_x^2}$.

At $i=1$, (55) is,

$$w_{1,j+1} = w_{1j} + r(w_{0j} - 2w_{1j} + w_{2j}) \quad (56)$$

The boundary condition at $x=0$ is $\frac{\partial U}{\partial x} = U$ in terms of forward difference this is

$$\frac{w_{1j} - w_{0j}}{h_x} = w_{0j}$$

rearranging

$$w_{0j} = \frac{w_{1j}}{1 + h_x} \quad (57)$$

Using (59) and (56) to eliminate we get,

$$w_{1,j+1} = \left(1 - 2r + \frac{r}{1 + h_x}\right) w_{1j} + rw_{2j}.$$

At $i=N-1$, (55) is,

$$w_{N-1,j+1} = w_{N-1j} + r(w_{N-2j} - 2w_{N-1j} + w_{Nj}) \quad (58)$$

The boundary condition at $x=1$ is $\frac{\partial U}{\partial x} = -U$ in terms of forward difference this is

$$\frac{w_{Nj} - w_{N-1j}}{h_x} = -w_{Nj}$$

rearranging

$$w_{Nj} = \frac{w_{N-1j}}{1 - h_x} \quad (59)$$

Using (59) and (58) to eliminate we get,

$$w_{N-1j+1} = rw_{N-2j} + \left(1 - 2r + \frac{r}{1 - h_x}\right) w_{N-1j}.$$

Choose $h_s = \frac{1}{5}$ and $k = \frac{1}{100}$ such that $r = \frac{1}{4}$.
The equations become

$$w_{1j+1} = \frac{7}{24}w_{1j} + \frac{1}{4}w_{2j},$$

$$w_{ij+1} = \frac{1}{4}(w_{i-1j} + 2w_{ij} + w_{i+1j}) \quad i = 2, 3$$

and

$$w_{5j+1} = \frac{1}{4}w_{3j} + \left(\frac{13}{16}w_{4j}\right)$$

In matrix form

$$\begin{pmatrix} w_{1j+1} \\ w_{2j+1} \\ w_{3j+1} \\ w_{4j+1} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{7}{24} & \frac{1}{4} & 0 & 0 \\ \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{4} & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{4} \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{4} & \frac{13}{16} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} w_{1j} \\ w_{2j} \\ w_{3j} \\ w_{4j} \end{pmatrix}.$$

with the boundaries given by

$$w_{0j+1} = \frac{10}{12}w_{1j+1},$$

$$w_{0j+1} = \frac{10}{8}w_{1j+1}.$$

10.6.1.2 Example 2

Using central difference approximation for the derivative boundary condition and the explicit method to approximate the PDE.

Our difference equation is as in (55).

At $i=0$ we have

$$w_{0j+1} = w_{0j} + r(w_{-1j} - 2w_{0j} + w_{1j}) \quad (60)$$

The boundary condition at $x=0$, in terms of central differences can be written as

$$\frac{w_{1j} - w_{-1j}}{2h_x} = w_{0j} \quad (61)$$

Using (61) and (60) to eliminate the fictitious term w_{-1j} we get,

$$w_{0j+1} = w_{0j} + 2r((-1 - h_x)w_{0j} + w_{1j})$$

10.6.1.3 Example 3

Using central difference approximation for the derivative boundary condition and the Crank-Nicholson method to approximate the PDE. The difference equation is,

$$\frac{w_{i,j+1} - w_{ij}}{k} = \frac{1}{2} \left\{ \frac{w_{i+1,j+1} - 2w_{ij+1} + w_{i-1,j+1}}{h^2} + \frac{w_{i+1,j} - 2w_{ij} + w_{i-1,j}}{h^2} \right\}$$

giving

$$-rw_{i-1,j+1} + (2 + 2r)w_{ij+1} - rw_{i+1,j+1} = rw_{i-1,j} + (2 - 2r)w_{ij} + rw_{i+1,j} \quad (62)$$

with $r = \frac{k}{h^2}$.

The boundary condition at $x=0$, in terms of central differences can be written as

$$\frac{w_{1j} - w_{-1j}}{2h_x} = w_{0j}$$

Rearranging we have

$$w_{-1j} = w_{1j} - 2h_x w_{0j} \quad (63)$$

and

$$w_{-1,j+1} = w_{1,j+1} - 2h_x w_{0,j+1} \quad (64)$$

Let $j=0$ and $i=0$ the difference equation becomes

$$-rw_{-11} + (2 + 2r)w_{01} - rw_{11} = rw_{-10} + (2 - 2r)w_{00} + rw_{10} \quad (65)$$

Using, (63), (64) and (65) we can eliminate the fictitious terms w_{-1j} and $w_{-1,j+1}$.

10.7 LOCAL TRUNCATION ERROR AND CONSISTENCY

Let $F_{ij}(w)$ represent the difference equation approximating the PDE at the i j th point with exact solution w .

If w is replaced by U at the mesh points of the difference equation where U is the exact solution of the PDE the value of $F_{ij}(U)$ is the local truncation error T_{ij} in at the ij mesh point.

Using Taylor expansions it is easy to express T_{ij} in terms of h_x and k and partial derivatives of U at (ih_x, jk) .

Although U and its derivatives are generally unknown it is worthwhile because it provides a method for comparing the local accuracies of different difference schemes approximating the PDE.

Example 40

The local truncation error of the classical explicit difference approach to

$$\frac{\partial U}{\partial t} - \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial x^2} = 0$$

with

$$F_{ij}(w) = \frac{w_{ij+1} - w_{ij}}{k} - \frac{w_{i+1j} - 2w_{ij} + w_{i-1j}}{h_x^2} = 0$$

is

$$T_{ij} = F_{ij}(U) = \frac{U_{ij+1} - U_{ij}}{k} - \frac{U_{i+1j} - 2U_{ij} + U_{i-1j}}{h_x^2} = 0$$

By Taylors expansions we have

$$\begin{aligned} U_{i+1j} &= U((i+1)h_x, jk) = U(x_i + h, t_j) \\ &= U_{ij} + h_x \left(\frac{\partial U}{\partial x} \right)_{ij} + \frac{h_x^2}{2} \left(\frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial x^2} \right)_{ij} + \frac{h_x^3}{6} \left(\frac{\partial^3 U}{\partial x^3} \right)_{ij} + \dots \\ U_{i-1j} &= U((i-1)h_x, jk) = U(x_i - h, t_j) \\ &= U_{ij} - h_x \left(\frac{\partial U}{\partial x} \right)_{ij} + \frac{h_x^2}{2} \left(\frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial x^2} \right)_{ij} - \frac{h_x^3}{6} \left(\frac{\partial^3 U}{\partial x^3} \right)_{ij} + \dots \\ U_{ij+1} &= U(ih_x, (j+1)k) = U(x_i, t_j + k) \\ &= U_{ij} + k \left(\frac{\partial U}{\partial t} \right)_{ij} + \frac{k^2}{2} \left(\frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial t^2} \right)_{ij} + \frac{k^3}{6} \left(\frac{\partial^3 U}{\partial t^3} \right)_{ij} + \dots \end{aligned}$$

substitution into the expression for T_{ij} then gives

$$\begin{aligned} T_{ij} &= \left(\frac{\partial U}{\partial t} - \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial x^2} \right)_{ij} + \frac{k}{2} \left(\frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial t^2} \right)_{ij} - \frac{h_x^2}{12} \left(\frac{\partial^4 U}{\partial x^4} \right)_{ij} \\ &\quad + \frac{k^2}{6} \left(\frac{\partial^3 U}{\partial t^3} \right)_{ij} - \frac{h_x^4}{360} \left(\frac{\partial^6 U}{\partial x^6} \right)_{ij} + \dots \end{aligned}$$

But U is the solution to the differential equation so

$$\left(\frac{\partial U}{\partial t} - \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial x^2} \right)_{ij} = 0$$

the principal part of the local truncation error is

$$\frac{k}{2} \left(\frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial t^2} \right)_{ij} - \frac{h_x^2}{12} \left(\frac{\partial^4 U}{\partial x^4} \right)_{ij}.$$

Hence

$$T_{ij} = O(k) + O(h_x^2)$$

◇

10.8 CONSISTENCY AND COMPATIBILITY

It is sometimes possible to approximate a parabolic or hyperbolic equation with a finite difference scheme that is stable but which does not converge to the solution of differential equation as the mesh lengths tend to zero. Such a scheme is called inconsistent or incompatible.

This is useful when considering the theorem which states that is a linear finite difference equation is consistent with a properly posed linear IVP then stability guarantees convergence of w to U as the mesh lengths tend to zero.

Definition Let $L(U) = 0$ represent the PDE in the independent variables x and t with the exact solution U .

Let $F(w) = 0$ represent the approximate finite difference equation with exact solution w .

Let v be a continuous function of x and t with sufficient derivatives to enable $L(v)$ to be evaluated at the point (ih_x, jk) . Then the truncation error $T_{ij}(v)$ at (ih_x, jk) is defined by

$$T_{ij}(v) = F_{ij}(v) - L(v_{ij})$$

If $T_{ij}(v) \rightarrow 0$ as $h \rightarrow 0$, $k \rightarrow 0$ the difference equation is said to be consistent or compatible with the with the PDE. \circ

Looking back at the previous example it follows that the classical explicit approximation to

$$\frac{\partial U}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial x^2}$$

is consistent with the difference equation.

10.9 CONVERGENCE AND STABILITY

Definition By convergence we mean that the results of the method approach the analytical solution as k and h_x tends to zero. \circ

Definition By stability we mean that errors at one stage of the calculations do not cause increasingly large errors as the computations are continued. \circ

10.10 STABILITY BY THE FOURIER SERIES METHOD (VON NEUMANN'S METHOD)

This method uses a Fourier series to express $w_{pq} = w(ph_x, qk)$ which is

$$w_{pq} = e^{i\beta x} \zeta^q$$

where $\xi = e^{ak}$ in this case i denotes the complex number $i = \sqrt{-1}$ and for values of β needed to satisfy the initial conditions. ξ is known as the amplification factor. The finite difference equation will be stable if $|w_{pq}|$ remains bounded for all q as $h \rightarrow 0, k \rightarrow 0$ and all β . If the exact solution does not increase exponentially with time then a necessary and sufficient condition is that

$$|\xi| \leq 1$$

10.10.1 Stability for the explicit FTCS Method

Investigating the stability of the fully implicit difference equation

$$\frac{1}{k}(w_{pq+1} - w_{pq}) = \frac{1}{h_x^2}(w_{p-1q} - 2w_{pq} + w_{p+1q})$$

approximating $\frac{\partial U}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial x^2}$ at (ph_x, qk) . Substituting $w_{pq} = e^{i\beta x} \xi^q$ into the difference equation

$$e^{i\beta ph} \xi^{q+1} - e^{i\beta ph} \xi^q = r \{ e^{i\beta(p-1)h} \xi^q - 2e^{i\beta ph} \xi^q + e^{i\beta(p+1)h} \xi^q \}$$

where $r = \frac{k}{h_x^2}$. Divide across by $e^{i\beta(p)h} \xi^q$ leads to

$$\begin{aligned} \xi - 1 &= r(e^{i\beta(-1)h} - 2 + e^{i\beta h}) \\ &= 1 + r(2\cos(\beta h) - 2) \\ &= 1 - 4r(\sin^2(\beta \frac{h}{2})) \end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$\left| 1 - 4r(\sin^2(\beta \frac{h}{2})) \right| \leq 1$$

for this to hold

$$4r(\sin^2(\beta \frac{h}{2})) \leq 2$$

which mean

$$r \leq \frac{1}{2}.$$

$0 < \xi \leq 1$ for $r < \frac{1}{2}$ and all β therefore the equation is conditionally stable.

10.10.2 Stability for the implicit BTCS Method

Investigating the stability of the fully implicit difference equation

$$\frac{1}{k}(w_{pq+1} - w_{pq}) = \frac{1}{h_x^2}(w_{p-1q+1} - 2w_{pq+1} + w_{p+1q+1})$$

approximating $\frac{\partial U}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial x^2}$ at (ph_x, qk) . Substituting $w_{pq} = e^{i\beta x} \zeta^q$ into the difference equation

$$e^{i\beta ph} \zeta^{q+1} - e^{i\beta ph} \zeta^q = r \{ e^{i\beta(p-1)h} \zeta^{q+1} - 2e^{i\beta ph} \zeta^{q+1} + e^{i\beta(p+1)h} \zeta^{q+1} \}$$

where $r = \frac{k}{h_x^2}$. Divide across by $e^{i\beta(p)h} \zeta^q$ leads to

$$\begin{aligned} \zeta - 1 &= r \zeta (e^{i\beta(-1)h} - 2 + e^{i\beta h}) \\ &= r \zeta (2\cos(\beta h) - 2) \\ &= -4r \zeta (\sin^2(\beta \frac{h}{2})) \end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$\zeta = \frac{1}{1 + 4r \sin^2(\frac{\beta h}{2})}$$

$0 < \zeta \leq 1$ for all $r > 0$ and all β therefore the equation is unconditionally stable.

10.10.3 Stability for the Crank Nicholson Method

Investigating the stability of the fully implicit difference equation

$$\frac{1}{k}(w_{pq+1} - w_{pq}) = \frac{1}{2h_x^2}(w_{p-1q+1} - 2w_{pq+1} + w_{p+1q+1}) + \frac{1}{2h_x^2}(w_{p-1q} - 2w_{pq} + w_{p+1q})$$

approximating $\frac{\partial U}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial x^2}$ at (ph_x, qk) . Substituting $w_{pq} = e^{i\beta x} \zeta^q$ into the difference equation

$$e^{i\beta ph} \zeta^{q+1} - e^{i\beta ph} \zeta^q = r \{ e^{i\beta(p-1)h} \zeta^{q+1} - 2e^{i\beta ph} \zeta^{q+1} + e^{i\beta(p+1)h} \zeta^{q+1} \}$$

where $r = \frac{k}{h_x^2}$. Divide across by $e^{i\beta(p)h} \zeta^q$ leads to

$$\begin{aligned} \zeta - 1 &= \frac{r}{2} \zeta (e^{i\beta(-1)h} - 2 + e^{i\beta h}) + \frac{r}{2} \{ e^{i\beta(p-1)h} \zeta^q - 2e^{i\beta ph} \zeta^q + e^{i\beta(p+1)h} \zeta^q \} \\ &= \frac{r}{2} \zeta (2\cos(\beta h) - 2) + \frac{r}{2} (2\cos(\beta h) - 2) \\ &= -2r \zeta (\sin^2(\beta \frac{h}{2})) - 2r (\sin^2(\beta \frac{h}{2})) \end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$\zeta = \frac{1 - 2r \sin^2(\frac{\beta h}{2})}{1 + 2r \sin^2(\frac{\beta h}{2})}$$

$0 < \zeta \leq 1$ for all $r > 0$ and all β therefore the equation is unconditionally stable.

PARTIAL DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS QUESTIONS

11.1 PARABOLIC EQUATIONS QUESTIONS

11.2 EXPLICIT EQUATIONS

1. a) Use the central difference formula for the second derivative

$$f''(x_0) = \frac{f(x_0 + h) - 2f(x_0) + f(x_0 - h)}{h^2} + \mathcal{O}(h^2)$$

to derive the explicit numerical scheme

$$w_{j,k+1} = rw_{j-1,k} + (1 - 2r)w_{j,k} + rw_{j+1,k},$$

where $r = \frac{k}{h^2}$, k is the step in the time direction and h is the step in the x direction, for the Heat equation

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}$$

on the rectangular domain

$$\Omega = \{(x, y) \mid a \leq x \leq b, c \leq y \leq d\}.$$

[10 marks]

- b) Consider the problem

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}$$

on the rectangular domain

$$\Omega = \{(x, y) \mid a \leq x \leq b, c \leq y \leq d\},$$

with the boundary conditions

$$u(0, t) = 1, \quad u(1, t) = 1,$$

and initial condition

$$u(x, 0) = 4x^2 - 4x + 1.$$

Taking $h = \frac{1}{4}$ in the x -direction and $k = \frac{1}{32}$ in the t -direction, set up and solve the corresponding systems of finite difference equations for one time step.

[18 marks]

- c) For the explicit method what is the step-size requirement for h and k for the method to be stable.

[5 marks]

2. a) Use the central difference formula for the second derivative

$$f''(x_0) = \frac{f(x_0 + h) - 2f(x_0) + f(x_0 - h)}{h^2} + \mathcal{O}(h^2)$$

to derive the explicit numerical scheme

$$w_{j,k+1} = rw_{j-1,k} + (1 - 2r)w_{j,k} + rw_{j+1,k},$$

where $r = \frac{k}{h^2}$, k is the step in the time direction and h is the step in the x direction, for the Heat equation

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}$$

on the rectangular domain

$$\Omega = \{(x, y) \mid a \leq x \leq b, c \leq y \leq d\}.$$

[10 marks]

- b) Consider the problem

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}$$

on the rectangular domain

$$\Omega = \{(x, y) \mid a \leq x \leq b, c \leq y \leq d\},$$

with the boundary conditions

$$u(0, t) = 1, \quad u(1, t) = 1,$$

and initial condition

$$u(x, 0) = \begin{cases} 1 - x & \text{for } 0 \leq t \leq \frac{1}{2} \\ x & \text{for } \frac{1}{2} \leq t \leq 1 \end{cases}.$$

Taking $h = \frac{1}{5}$ in the x -direction and $k = \frac{1}{250}$ in the t -direction, set up and solve the corresponding systems of

finite difference equations for one time step.

[18 marks]

- c) For the explicit method what is the step-size requirement for h and k for the method to be stable.

[5 marks]

3. a) Use the central difference formula for the second derivative

$$f''(x_0) = \frac{f(x_0 + h) - 2f(x_0) + f(x_0 - h)}{h^2} + \mathcal{O}(h^2)$$

to derive the explicit numerical scheme

$$w_{j,k+1} = rw_{j-1,k} + (1 - 2r)w_{j,k} + rw_{j+1,k},$$

where $r = \frac{k}{h^2}$, k is the step in the time direction and h is the step in the x direction, for the Heat equation

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}$$

on the rectangular domain

$$\Omega = \{(x, y) \mid a \leq x \leq b, c \leq y \leq d\}.$$

[10 marks]

- b) Consider the problem

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}$$

on the rectangular domain

$$\Omega = \{(x, y) \mid a \leq x \leq b, c \leq y \leq d\},$$

with the boundary conditions

$$u(0, t) = 0, u(1, t) = 0,$$

and initial condition

$$u(x, 0) = 2\sin(2\pi x)$$

Taking $h = \frac{1}{6}$ in the x -direction and $k = \frac{1}{144}$ in the t -direction, set up and solve the corresponding systems of finite difference equations for one time step.

[18 marks]

- c) For the explicit method what is the step-size requirement for h and k for the method to be stable.

[5 marks]

11.3 IMPLICIT METHODS

4. a) Use the central difference formula for the second derivative

$$f''(x_0) = \frac{f(x_0 + h) - 2f(x_0) + f(x_0 - h)}{h^2} + \mathcal{O}(h^2)$$

to derive the implicit numerical scheme

$$-rw_{j-1,k} + (1 + 2r)w_{j,k} - rw_{j+1,k} = w_{j,k},$$

where $r = \frac{k}{h^2}$, k is the step in the time direction and h is the step in the x direction, for the Heat equation

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}$$

on the rectangular domain

$$\Omega = \{(x, y) \mid a \leq x \leq b, c \leq y \leq d\}.$$

[13 marks]

- b) Consider the problem

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}$$

on the rectangular domain

$$\Omega = \{(x, y) \mid a \leq x \leq b, c \leq y \leq d\},$$

with the boundary conditions

$$u(0, t) = 1, \quad u(1, t) = 1,$$

and initial condition

$$u(x, 0) = 4x^2 - 4x + 1.$$

Taking $h = \frac{1}{4}$ in the x -direction and $k = \frac{1}{32}$ in the t -direction, set up and write in matrix form (but do not solve) the corresponding systems of finite difference equations for one time step.

[20 marks]

5. a) Use the central difference formula for the second derivative

$$f''(x_0) = \frac{f(x_0 + h) - 2f(x_0) + f(x_0 - h)}{h^2} + \mathcal{O}(h^2)$$

to derive the implicit numerical scheme

$$-rw_{j-1,k} + (1 + 2r)w_{j,k} - rw_{j+1,k} = w_{j,k},$$

where $r = \frac{k}{h^2}$, k is the step in the time direction and h is the step in the x direction, for the Heat equation

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}$$

on the rectangular domain

$$\Omega = \{(x, y) \mid a \leq x \leq b, c \leq y \leq d\}.$$

[13 marks]

- b) Consider the problem

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}$$

on the rectangular domain

$$\Omega = \{(x, y) \mid a \leq x \leq b, c \leq y \leq d\},$$

with the boundary conditions

$$u(0, t) = 1, \quad u(1, t) = 1,$$

and initial condition

$$u(x, 0) = \begin{cases} 1 - x & \text{for } 0 \leq t \leq \frac{1}{2} \\ x & \text{for } \frac{1}{2} \leq t \leq 1 \end{cases}.$$

Taking $h = \frac{1}{5}$ in the x -direction and $k = \frac{1}{250}$ in the t -direction, set up and write in matrix form (but do not solve) the corresponding systems of finite difference equations for one time step.

[20 marks]

6. a) Use the central difference formula for the second derivative

$$f''(x_0) = \frac{f(x_0 + h) - 2f(x_0) + f(x_0 - h)}{h^2} + \mathcal{O}(h^2)$$

to derive the implicit numerical scheme

$$-rw_{j-1,k} + (1 + 2r)w_{j,k} - rw_{j+1,k} = w_{j,k},$$

where $r = \frac{k}{h^2}$, k is the step in the time direction and h is the step in the x direction, for the Heat equation

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}$$

on the rectangular domain

$$\Omega = \{(x, y) \mid a \leq x \leq b, c \leq y \leq d\}.$$

[13 marks]

- b) Consider the problem

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}$$

on the rectangular domain

$$\Omega = \{(x, y) \mid a \leq x \leq b, c \leq y \leq d\},$$

with the boundary conditions

$$u(0, t) = 0, \quad u(1, t) = 0,$$

and initial condition

$$u(x, 0) = 2\sin(2\pi x)$$

Taking $h = \frac{1}{6}$ in the x -direction and $k = \frac{1}{144}$ in the t -direction, set up and write in matrix form (but do not solve) the corresponding systems of finite difference equations for one time step.

[20 marks]

11.4 CRANK NICHOLSON METHODS

7. a) Use the central difference formula for the second derivative

$$f''(x_0) = \frac{f(x_0 + h) - 2f(x_0) + f(x_0 - h)}{h^2} + \mathcal{O}(h^2)$$

to derive the Crank Nicholson numerical scheme

$$-rw_{j-1,k} + (2 + 2r)w_{j,k} - rw_{j+1,k} = rw_{j-1,k} + (2 - 2r)w_{j,k} + rw_{j+1,k},$$

where $r = \frac{k}{h^2}$, k is the step in the time direction and h is the step in the x direction, for the Heat equation

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}$$

on the rectangular domain

$$\Omega = \{(x, y) \mid a \leq x \leq b, c \leq y \leq d\}.$$

[13 marks]

- b) Consider the problem

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}$$

on the rectangular domain

$$\Omega = \{(x, y) \mid a \leq x \leq b, c \leq y \leq d\},$$

with the boundary conditions

$$u(0, t) = 1, \quad u(1, t) = 1,$$

and initial condition

$$u(x, 0) = 4x^2 - 4x + 1.$$

Taking $h = \frac{1}{4}$ in the x -direction and $k = \frac{1}{32}$ in the t -direction, set up and write in matrix form (but do not solve) the corresponding systems of finite difference equations for one time step.

[20 marks]

8. a) Use the central difference formula for the second derivative

$$f''(x_0) = \frac{f(x_0 + h) - 2f(x_0) + f(x_0 - h)}{h^2} + \mathcal{O}(h^2)$$

to derive the Crank Nicholson numerical scheme

$$-rw_{j-1,k} + (2 + 2r)w_{j,k} - rw_{j+1,k} = rw_{j-1,k} + (2 - 2r)w_{j,k} + rw_{j+1,k},$$

where $r = \frac{k}{h^2}$, k is the step in the time direction and h is the step in the x direction, for the Heat equation

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}$$

on the rectangular domain

$$\Omega = \{(x, y) \mid a \leq x \leq b, c \leq y \leq d\}.$$

[13 marks]

- b) Consider the problem

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}$$

on the rectangular domain

$$\Omega = \{(x, y) \mid a \leq x \leq b, c \leq y \leq d\},$$

with the boundary conditions

$$u(0, t) = 1, \quad u(1, t) = 1,$$

and initial condition

$$u(x, 0) = \begin{cases} 1 - x & \text{for } 0 \leq t \leq \frac{1}{2} \\ x & \text{for } \frac{1}{2} \leq t \leq 1 \end{cases}.$$

Taking $h = \frac{1}{5}$ in the x -direction and $k = \frac{1}{250}$ in the t -direction, set up and write in matrix form (but do not solve) the corresponding systems of finite difference equations for one time step.

[20 marks]

9. a) Use the central difference formula for the second derivative

$$f''(x_0) = \frac{f(x_0 + h) - 2f(x_0) + f(x_0 - h)}{h^2} + \mathcal{O}(h^2)$$

to derive the Crank Nicholson numerical scheme

$$-rw_{j-1,k} + (2+2r)w_{j,k} - rw_{j+1,k} = rw_{j-1,k} + (2-2r)w_{j,k} + rw_{j+1,k},$$

where $r = \frac{k}{h^2}$, k is the step in the time direction and h is the step in the x direction, for the Heat equation

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}$$

on the rectangular domain

$$\Omega = \{(x, y) \mid a \leq x \leq b, c \leq y \leq d\}.$$

[13 marks]

b) Consider the problem

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}$$

on the rectangular domain

$$\Omega = \{(x, y) \mid a \leq x \leq b, c \leq y \leq d\},$$

with the boundary conditions

$$u(0, t) = 0, \quad u(1, t) = 0,$$

and initial condition

$$u(x, 0) = 2\sin(2\pi x)$$

Taking $h = \frac{1}{6}$ in the x -direction and $k = \frac{1}{144}$ in the t -direction, set up and write in matrix form (but do not solve) the corresponding systems of finite difference equations for one time step.

[20 marks]

ELLIPTIC PDE'S

The Poisson equation is

$$-\nabla^2 U(x, y) = f(x, y), \quad (x, y) \in \Omega = (0, 1) \times (0, 1)$$

with boundary conditions

$$u(x, y) = g(x, y), \quad (x, y) \in \partial\Omega - \text{boundary}$$

12.1 THE FIVE POINT SCHEME

First we put a grid on our domain the unit square $\bar{\Omega} = [0, 1] \times [0, 1] = \Omega \cup \partial\Omega$. We will only consider a uniform grid.

$$\Delta = \{(x_i, y_j) \in [0, 1] \times [0, 1] : x_i = ih, y_j = jh\}.$$

The interior nodes are

$$\Omega_h = \{(x_i, y_j) \in \Delta : 1 \leq i, j \leq N-1\}.$$

The boundary nodes are

$$\partial\Omega_h = \{(x_0, y_j), (x_N, y_j), (x_i, y_0), (x_i, y_N) : 1 \leq i, j \leq N-1\}$$

Our equations are discretised using central differencing

$$\begin{aligned} -(\delta_x^2 w_{ij} + \delta_y^2 w_{ij}) &= f_{ij} \quad (x_i, y_j) \in \Omega_h \\ W_{ij} &= g_{ij} \quad (x_i, y_j) \in \partial\Omega_h \end{aligned}$$

Using the central differencing we have

$$\delta_x^2 = \frac{1}{h^2} (w_{i+1j} - 2w_{ij} + w_{i-1j}),$$

and

$$\delta_y^2 = \frac{1}{h^2} (w_{ij+1} - 2w_{ij} + w_{ij-1}).$$

Therefore the difference equation looks like

$$-(w_{i-1j} + w_{i+1j} - 4w_{ij} + w_{ij+1} + w_{ij-1}) = h^2 f_{ij}.$$

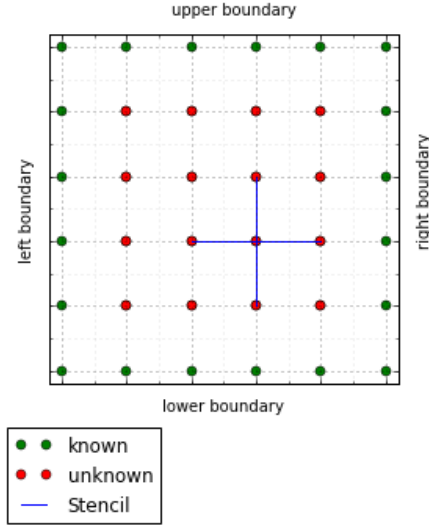


Figure 12.1.1: Graphical representation of the difference equation stencil

Unlike the Parabolic equation we cannot solve an Elliptic equation by holding one variable constant and then stepping on we must solve all points at the same time.

We need to look at the matrix of the system of equations for the parabolic case we dealt with $(N - 1)$ equations at a time, for the Hyperbolic case we must deal with $(N - 1) \times (N - 1)$ equations.

The matrix has the following block tridiagonal structure

$$\begin{pmatrix} T & I & 0 & 0 & . & . & . \\ I & T & I & 0 & 0 & . & . \\ 0 & . & . & . & 0 & . & . \\ . & . & . & . & . & . & . \\ . & . & . & 0 & I & T & I \\ . & . & . & . & 0 & I & T \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{w}_1 \\ \mathbf{w}_2 \\ . \\ . \\ \mathbf{w}_{N-2} \\ \mathbf{w}_{N-1} \end{pmatrix} = -h^2 \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{r}_1 \\ \mathbf{r}_2 \\ . \\ . \\ \mathbf{r}_{N-2} \\ \mathbf{r}_{N-1} \end{pmatrix}$$

Where I denotes an $N - 1 \times N - 1$ identity matrix and T is

$$T = \begin{pmatrix} -4 & 1 & 0 & 0 & . & . & . \\ 1 & -4 & 1 & 0 & 0 & . & . \\ 0 & . & . & . & 0 & . & . \\ . & . & . & . & . & . & . \\ . & . & . & 0 & 1 & -4 & 1 \\ . & . & . & . & 0 & 1 & -4 \end{pmatrix}.$$

\mathbf{w}_j represents the vector of approximations

$$\mathbf{w}_j = \begin{pmatrix} w_{1j} \\ w_{2j} \\ \vdots \\ w_{N-2j} \\ w_{N-1j} \end{pmatrix}$$

and $\mathbf{r}_j = \mathbf{b}_j - \mathbf{f}_j$, where \mathbf{b} is the vector of boundary conditions

$$\mathbf{b}_j = - \begin{pmatrix} g_{0j} \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \\ g_{Nj} \end{pmatrix}$$

for $j = 2, \dots, N-2$, for $j=1$ and $j=N-1$ we have

$$\mathbf{b}_1 = - \begin{pmatrix} g_{01} + g_{10} \\ g_{02} \\ \vdots \\ g_{0N-2} \\ g_{0N-1} + g_{1N} \end{pmatrix} \quad \mathbf{b}_{N-1} = - \begin{pmatrix} g_{1N} + g_{0N-1} \\ g_{2N} \\ \vdots \\ g_{N-2N} \\ g_{N-1N} + g_{NN-1} \end{pmatrix}$$

and

$$\mathbf{f}_j = - \begin{pmatrix} f_{1j} \\ f_{2j} \\ \vdots \\ f_{N-2j} \\ f_{N-1j} \end{pmatrix}$$

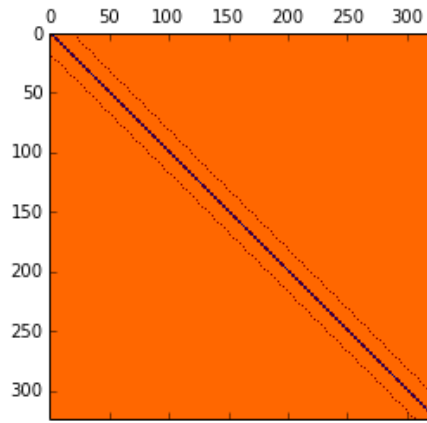


Figure 12.1.2: Graphical representation of the large matrix

The matrix has a unique solution. For sparse matrices of this form an iterative method is used as it would be too computationally expensive to compute the inverse.

12.2 SPECIFIC EXAMPLES

12.2.1 Example 1: Homogeneous equation with non-zero boundary

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} = 0, \quad (x, y) \in \Omega = (0, 1) \times (0, 1),$$

with boundary conditions:

Lower boundary

$$u(x, 0) = \sin(2\pi x),$$

Upper boundary

$$u(x, 1) = \sin(2\pi x),$$

Left boundary

$$u(0, y) = 2 * \sin(2\pi y),$$

Right boundary

$$u(1, y) = 2 * \sin(2\pi y).$$

There for the difference equation looks like

$$-(w_{i-1j} + w_{ij-1} - 4w_{ij} + w_{ij+1} + w_{i+1j}) = 0.$$

Let $N = 5$

Step-size

$$h = \frac{1}{5-1} = \frac{1}{4}$$

$$\begin{array}{l|l}
i=1, j=1 & w_{0,1} + w_{1,0} - 4w_{1,1} + w_{1,2} + w_{2,1} = \frac{1}{4}^2 0 \\
i=2, j=1 & w_{1,1} + w_{2,0} - 4w_{2,1} + w_{2,2} + w_{3,1} = \frac{1}{4}^2 0 \\
i=3, j=1 & w_{2,1} + w_{3,0} - 4w_{3,1} + w_{3,2} + w_{4,1} = \frac{1}{4}^2 0 \\
j=2 & \\
i=1, j=2 & w_{0,2} + w_{1,1} - 4w_{1,2} + w_{1,3} + w_{2,2} = \frac{1}{4}^2 0 \\
i=2, j=2 & w_{1,2} + w_{2,1} - 4w_{2,2} + w_{2,3} + w_{3,2} = \frac{1}{4}^2 0 \\
i=3, j=2 & w_{2,2} + w_{3,1} - 4w_{3,2} + w_{3,3} + w_{4,2} = \frac{1}{4}^2 0 \\
j=3 & \\
i=1, j=3 & w_{0,3} + w_{1,2} - 4w_{1,3} + w_{1,4} + w_{2,3} = \frac{1}{4}^2 0 \\
i=2, j=3 & w_{1,3} + w_{2,2} - 4w_{2,3} + w_{2,4} + w_{3,3} = \frac{1}{4}^2 0 \\
i=3, j=3 & w_{2,3} + w_{3,2} - 4w_{3,3} + w_{3,4} + w_{4,3} = \frac{1}{4}^2 0
\end{array}$$

Re-arranging

$$\begin{array}{l|l}
i=1, j=1 & -4w_{1,1} + w_{1,2} + w_{2,1} = \frac{1}{4}^2 0 - w_{0,1} - w_{1,0} \\
i=2, j=1 & w_{1,1} - 4w_{2,1} + w_{2,2} + w_{3,1} = \frac{1}{4}^2 0 - w_{2,0} \\
i=3, j=1 & w_{2,1} - 4w_{3,1} + w_{3,2} = \frac{1}{4}^2 0 - w_{4,1} - w_{3,0} \\
j=2 & \\
i=1, j=2 & w_{1,1} - 4w_{1,2} + w_{1,3} + w_{2,2} = \frac{1}{4}^2 0 - w_{0,2} \\
i=2, j=2 & w_{1,2} + w_{2,1} - 4w_{2,2} + w_{2,3} + w_{3,2} = \frac{1}{4}^2 0 \\
i=3, j=2 & w_{2,2} + w_{3,1} - 4w_{3,2} + w_{3,3} = \frac{1}{4}^2 0 - w_{4,2} \\
j=3 & \\
i=1, j=3 & w_{1,2} - 4w_{1,3} + w_{2,3} = \frac{1}{4}^2 0 - w_{0,3} - w_{1,4} \\
i=2, j=3 & w_{1,3} + w_{2,2} - 4w_{2,3} + w_{3,3} = \frac{1}{4}^2 0 - w_{2,4} \\
i=3, j=3 & w_{2,3} + w_{3,2} - 4w_{3,3} = \frac{1}{4}^2 0 - w_{4,3} - w_{3,4}
\end{array}$$

Boundary Conditions

Left boundary

$$\begin{aligned}
x_0 &= 0 \\
u(0, y) &= 2 \sin(2\pi y) \\
w_{0,0} &= 0 \\
w_{0,1} &= 2 \sin(2\pi y_1) = 2 \\
w_{0,2} &= 2 \sin(2\pi y_2) = 0 \\
w_{0,3} &= 2 \sin(2\pi y_3) = -2 \\
w_{0,4} &= 2 \sin(2\pi y_4) = 0
\end{aligned}$$

Right boundary

$$\begin{aligned}
x_4 &= 1 \\
u(1, y) &= 2 \sin(2\pi y) \\
w_{4,0} &= 0 \\
w_{4,1} &= 2 \sin(2\pi y_1) = 2 \\
w_{4,2} &= 2 \sin(2\pi y_2) = 0 \\
w_{4,3} &= 2 \sin(2\pi y_3) = -2 \\
w_{4,4} &= 2 \sin(2\pi y_4) = 0
\end{aligned}$$

Lower boundary

$$\begin{aligned}
y_0 &= 0 \\
u(x, 0) &= \sin(2\pi x) \\
w_{0,0} &= 0 \\
w_{1,0} &= \sin(2\pi x_1) = 1 \\
w_{2,0} &= \sin(2\pi x_2) = 0 \\
w_{3,0} &= \sin(2\pi x_3) = -1 \\
w_{4,0} &= \sin(2\pi x_4) = 0
\end{aligned}$$

Upper boundary

$$\begin{aligned}
y_4 &= 1 \\
u(x, 1) &= \sin(2\pi x) \\
w_{0,4} &= 0 \\
w_{1,4} &= \sin(2\pi x_1) = 1 \\
w_{2,4} &= \sin(2\pi x_2) = 0 \\
w_{3,4} &= \sin(2\pi x_3) = -1 \\
w_{4,4} &= \sin(2\pi x_4) = 0
\end{aligned}$$

In 9×9 Matrix form

$$\begin{pmatrix} -4 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & -4 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -4 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & -4 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -4 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -4 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & -4 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -4 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} w_{1,1} \\ w_{2,1} \\ w_{3,1} \\ w_{1,2} \\ w_{2,2} \\ w_{3,2} \\ w_{1,3} \\ w_{2,3} \\ w_{3,3} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -w_{1,0} \\ -w_{2,0} \\ -w_{3,0} \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ -w_{1,4} \\ -w_{2,4} \\ -w_{3,4} \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -w_{0,1} \\ 0 \\ -w_{4,1} \\ -w_{0,2} \\ 0 \\ -w_{4,2} \\ -w_{0,3} \\ 0 \\ -w_{4,3} \end{pmatrix}$$

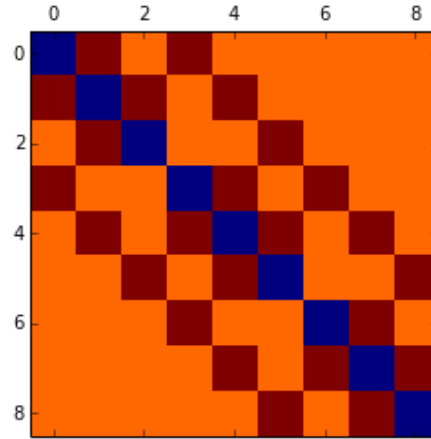


Figure 12.2.1: Graphical representation of the matrix

In 9×9 Matrix with specific values

$$\begin{pmatrix} -4 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & -4 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -4 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & -4 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -4 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -4 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & -4 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -4 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} w_{1,1} \\ w_{2,1} \\ w_{3,1} \\ w_{1,2} \\ w_{2,2} \\ w_{3,2} \\ w_{1,3} \\ w_{2,3} \\ w_{3,3} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ -1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 0 \\ -2 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 2 \\ 0 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

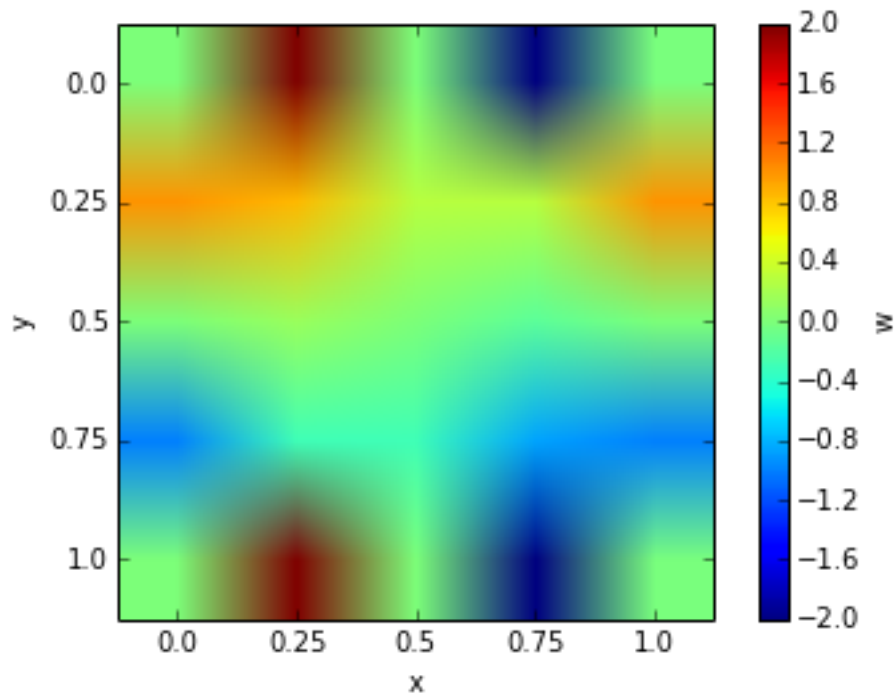


Figure 12.2.2: Numerical solution of the homogeneous differential equation

12.2.2 Example 2: non-homogeneous equation with zero boundary

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} = x^2 + y^2 \quad (x, y) \in \Omega = (0, 1) \times (0, 1)$$

with boundary conditions: Left boundary:

$$u(x, 0) = 0$$

Right boundary:

$$u(x, 1) = 0$$

Lower boundary:

$$u(0, y) = 0$$

Upper boundary:

$$u(1, y) = 0$$

There for the difference equation looks like

$$-(w_{i-1j} + w_{ij-1} - 4w_{ij} + w_{ij+1} + w_{i+1j}) = h^2(x_i^2 + y_j^2).$$

Let $N = 5$

Step-size

$$h = \frac{1}{5-1} = \frac{1}{4}$$

$$\begin{array}{l|l}
i = 1, j = 1 & w_{0,1} + w_{1,0} - 4w_{1,1} + w_{1,2} + w_{2,1} = \frac{1}{4}(x_1^2 + y_1^2) \\
i = 2, j = 1 & w_{1,1} + w_{2,0} - 4w_{2,1} + w_{2,2} + w_{3,1} = \frac{1}{4}(x_2^2 + y_1^2) \\
i = 3, j = 1 & w_{2,1} + w_{3,0} - 4w_{3,1} + w_{3,2} + w_{4,1} = \frac{1}{4}(x_3^2 + y_1^2) \\
j = 2 & \\
i = 1, j = 2 & w_{0,2} + w_{1,1} - 4w_{1,2} + w_{1,3} + w_{2,2} = \frac{1}{4}(x_1^2 + y_2^2) \\
i = 2, j = 2 & w_{1,2} + w_{2,1} - 4w_{2,2} + w_{2,3} + w_{3,2} = \frac{1}{4}(x_2^2 + y_2^2) \\
i = 3, j = 2 & w_{2,2} + w_{3,1} - 4w_{3,2} + w_{3,3} + w_{4,2} = \frac{1}{4}(x_3^2 + y_2^2) \\
j = 3 & \\
i = 1, j = 3 & w_{0,3} + w_{1,2} - 4w_{1,3} + w_{1,4} + w_{2,3} = \frac{1}{4}(x_1^2 + y_3^2) \\
i = 2, j = 3 & w_{1,3} + w_{2,2} - 4w_{2,3} + w_{2,4} + w_{3,3} = \frac{1}{4}(x_2^2 + y_3^2) \\
i = 3, j = 3 & w_{2,3} + w_{3,2} - 4w_{3,3} + w_{3,4} + w_{4,3} = \frac{1}{4}(x_3^2 + y_3^2)
\end{array}$$

Re-arranging

$$\begin{array}{l|l}
i = 1, j = 1 & -4w_{1,1} + w_{1,2} + w_{2,1} = \frac{1}{4}(x_1^2 + y_1^2) - w_{0,1} - w_{1,0} \\
i = 2, j = 1 & w_{1,1} - 4w_{2,1} + w_{2,2} + w_{3,1} = \frac{1}{4}(x_2^2 + y_1^2) - w_{2,0} \\
i = 3, j = 1 & w_{2,1} - 4w_{3,1} + w_{3,2} = \frac{1}{4}(x_3^2 + y_1^2) - w_{4,1} - w_{3,0} \\
j = 2 & \\
i = 1, j = 2 & w_{1,1} - 4w_{1,2} + w_{1,3} + w_{2,2} = \frac{1}{4}(x_1^2 + y_2^2) - w_{0,2} \\
i = 2, j = 2 & w_{1,2} + w_{2,1} - 4w_{2,2} + w_{2,3} + w_{3,2} = \frac{1}{4}(x_2^2 + y_2^2) \\
i = 3, j = 2 & w_{2,2} + w_{3,1} - 4w_{3,2} + w_{3,3} = \frac{1}{4}(x_3^2 + y_2^2) - w_{4,2} \\
j = 3 & \\
i = 1, j = 3 & w_{1,2} - 4w_{1,3} + w_{2,3} = \frac{1}{4}(x_1^2 + y_3^2) - w_{0,3} - w_{1,4} \\
i = 2, j = 3 & w_{1,3} + w_{2,2} - 4w_{2,3} + w_{3,3} = \frac{1}{4}(x_2^2 + y_3^2) - w_{2,4} \\
i = 3, j = 3 & w_{2,3} + w_{3,2} - 4w_{3,3} = \frac{1}{4}(x_3^2 + y_3^2) - w_{4,3} - w_{3,4}
\end{array}$$

Boundary Conditions

| Left Boundary | Right Boundary |
|---------------|----------------|
| $x_0 = 0$ | $x_4 = 1$ |
| $u(0, y) = 0$ | $u(1, y) = 0$ |
| $w_{0,0} = 0$ | $w_{4,0} = 0$ |
| $w_{0,1} = 0$ | $w_{4,1} = 0$ |
| $w_{0,2} = 0$ | $w_{4,2} = 0$ |
| $w_{0,3} = 0$ | $w_{4,3} = 0$ |
| $w_{0,4} = 0$ | $w_{4,4} = 0$ |

Left Boundary

$$\begin{aligned}
y_0 &= 0 \\
u(x, 0) &= 0 \\
w_{0,0} &= 0 \\
w_{1,0} &= 0 \\
w_{2,0} &= 0 \\
w_{3,0} &= 0 \\
w_{4,0} &= 0
\end{aligned}$$

Right Boundary

$$\begin{aligned}
y_4 &= 1 \\
u(x, 1) &= 0 \\
w_{0,4} &= 0 \\
w_{1,4} &= 0 \\
w_{2,4} &= 0 \\
w_{3,4} &= 0 \\
w_{4,4} &= 0
\end{aligned}$$

In 9×9 Matrix form

$$\begin{pmatrix} -4 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & -4 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -4 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & -4 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -4 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -4 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & -4 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -4 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} w_{1,1} \\ w_{2,1} \\ w_{3,1} \\ w_{1,2} \\ w_{2,2} \\ w_{3,2} \\ w_{1,3} \\ w_{2,3} \\ w_{3,3} \end{pmatrix} = h^2 \begin{pmatrix} (x_1^2 + y_1^2) \\ (x_2^2 + y_1^2) \\ (x_3^2 + y_1^2) \\ (x_1^2 + y_2^2) \\ (x_2^2 + y_2^2) \\ (x_3^2 + y_2^2) \\ (x_1^2 + y_3^2) \\ (x_2^2 + y_3^2) \\ (x_3^2 + y_3^2) \end{pmatrix}$$

In 9×9 Matrix form

$$\begin{pmatrix} -4 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & -4 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -4 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & -4 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -4 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -4 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & -4 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -4 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} w_{1,1} \\ w_{2,1} \\ w_{3,1} \\ w_{1,2} \\ w_{2,2} \\ w_{3,2} \\ w_{1,3} \\ w_{2,3} \\ w_{3,3} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0.0078125 \\ 0.01953125 \\ 0.0390625 \\ 0.01953125 \\ 0.0312 \\ 0.05078125 \\ 0.0390625 \\ 0.05078125 \\ 0.0703125 \end{pmatrix}$$

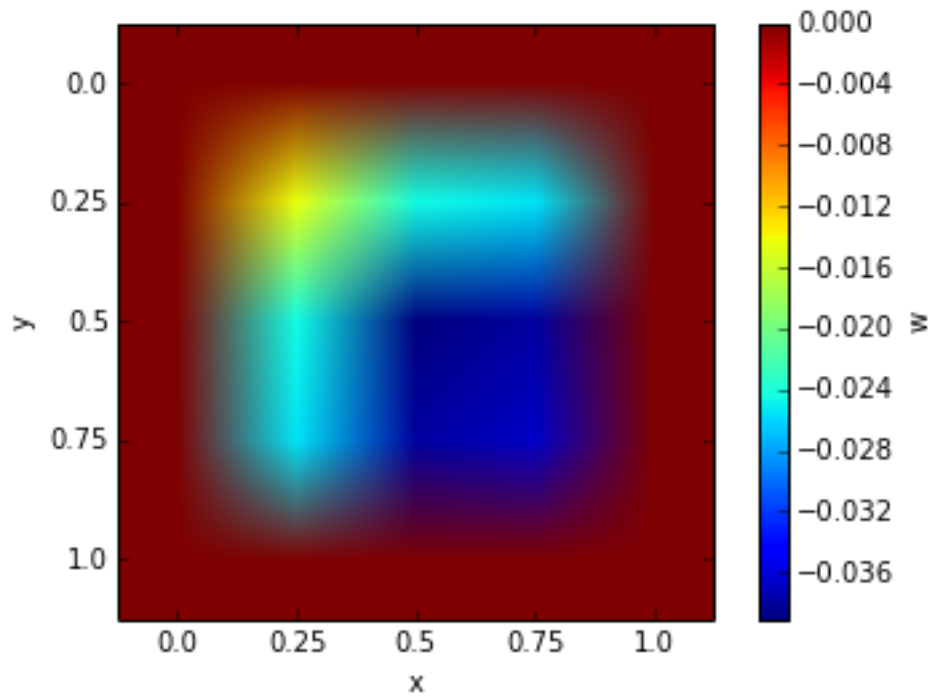


Figure 12.2.3: Numerical solution of the differential equation with o boundary conditions

12.2.3 Example 3: Inhomogeneous equation with non-zero boundary

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} = xy, \quad (x, y) \in \Omega = (0, 1) \times (0, 1),$$

with boundary conditions

Right Boundary

$$u(x, 0) = -x^2 + x$$

Left Boundary

$$u(x, 1) = x^2 - x$$

Lower Boundary

$$u(0, y) = -y^2 + y$$

Upper Boundary

$$u(1, y) = -y^2 + y$$

There for the difference equation looks like

$$-(w_{i-1j} + w_{ij-1} - 4w_{ij} + w_{ij+1} + w_{i+1j}) = h^2(x_i y_j).$$

Let $N = 5$

Step-size

$$h = \frac{1}{5-1} = \frac{1}{4}$$

$$\begin{array}{l|l}
i = 1, j = 1 & w_{0,1} + w_{1,0} - 4w_{1,1} + w_{1,2} + w_{2,1} = \frac{1}{4}^2(x_1y_1) \\
i = 2, j = 1 & w_{1,1} + w_{2,0} - 4w_{2,1} + w_{2,2} + w_{3,1} = \frac{1}{4}^2(x_2y_1) \\
i = 3, j = 1 & w_{2,1} + w_{3,0} - 4w_{3,1} + w_{3,2} + w_{4,1} = \frac{1}{4}^2(x_3y_1) \\
j = 2 & \\
i = 1, j = 2 & w_{0,2} + w_{1,1} - 4w_{1,2} + w_{1,3} + w_{2,2} = \frac{1}{4}^2(x_1y_2) \\
i = 2, j = 2 & w_{1,2} + w_{2,1} - 4w_{2,2} + w_{2,3} + w_{3,2} = \frac{1}{4}^2(x_2y_2) \\
i = 3, j = 2 & w_{2,2} + w_{3,1} - 4w_{3,2} + w_{3,3} + w_{4,2} = \frac{1}{4}^2(x_3y_2) \\
j = 3 & \\
i = 1, j = 3 & w_{0,3} + w_{1,2} - 4w_{1,3} + w_{1,4} + w_{2,3} = \frac{1}{4}^2(x_1y_3) \\
i = 2, j = 3 & w_{1,3} + w_{2,2} - 4w_{2,3} + w_{2,4} + w_{3,3} = \frac{1}{4}^2(x_2y_3) \\
i = 3, j = 3 & w_{2,3} + w_{3,2} - 4w_{3,3} + w_{3,4} + w_{4,3} = \frac{1}{4}^2(x_3y_3)
\end{array}$$

Re-arranging

$$\begin{array}{l|l}
i = 1, j = 1 & -4w_{1,1} + w_{1,2} + w_{2,1} = \frac{1}{4}^2(x_1y_1) - w_{0,1} - w_{1,0} \\
i = 2, j = 1 & w_{1,1} - 4w_{2,1} + w_{2,2} + w_{3,1} = \frac{1}{4}^2(x_2y_1) - w_{2,0} \\
i = 3, j = 1 & w_{2,1} - 4w_{3,1} + w_{3,2} = \frac{1}{4}^2(x_3y_1) - w_{4,1} - w_{3,0} \\
j = 2 & \\
i = 1, j = 2 & w_{1,1} - 4w_{1,2} + w_{1,3} + w_{2,2} = \frac{1}{4}^2(x_1y_2) - w_{0,2} \\
i = 2, j = 2 & w_{1,2} + w_{2,1} - 4w_{2,2} + w_{2,3} + w_{3,2} = \frac{1}{4}^2(x_2y_2) \\
i = 3, j = 2 & w_{2,2} + w_{3,1} - 4w_{3,2} + w_{3,3} = \frac{1}{4}^2(x_3y_2) - w_{4,2} \\
j = 3 & \\
i = 1, j = 3 & w_{1,2} - 4w_{1,3} + w_{2,3} = \frac{1}{4}^2(x_1y_3) - w_{0,3} - w_{1,4} \\
i = 2, j = 3 & w_{1,3} + w_{2,2} - 4w_{2,3} + w_{3,3} = \frac{1}{4}^2(x_2y_3) - w_{2,4} \\
i = 3, j = 3 & w_{2,3} + w_{3,2} - 4w_{3,3} = \frac{1}{4}^2(x_3y_3) - w_{4,3} - w_{3,4}
\end{array}$$

Boundary Conditions

Left boundary

$$x_0 = 0$$

$$u(0, y) = -y^2 + y$$

$$w_{0,0} = 0$$

$$w_{0,1} = -y_1^2 + y_1 = \frac{3}{16}$$

$$w_{0,2} = -y_2^2 + y_2 = \frac{1}{4}$$

$$w_{0,3} = -y_3^2 + y_3 = \frac{3}{16}$$

$$w_{0,4} = -y_4^2 + y_4 = 0$$

Right boundary

$$x_4 = 1$$

$$u(1, y) = -y^2 + y$$

$$w_{4,0} = 0$$

$$w_{4,1} = -y_1^2 + y_1 = \frac{1}{16}$$

$$w_{4,2} = -y_2^2 + y_2 = \frac{1}{4}$$

$$w_{4,3} = -y_3^2 + y_3 = \frac{3}{16}$$

$$w_{4,4} = -y_4^2 + y_4 = 0$$

Lower boundary

$$\begin{aligned}
y_0 &= 0 \\
u(x, 0) &= -x^2 + x \\
w_{0,0} &= 0 \\
w_{1,0} &= -x_1^2 + x_1 = \frac{3}{16} \\
w_{2,0} &= -x_2^2 + x_2 = \frac{1}{4} \\
w_{3,0} &= -x_3^2 + x_3 = \frac{3}{16} \\
w_{4,0} &= 0
\end{aligned}$$

Upper boundary

$$\begin{aligned}
y_4 &= 1 \\
u(x, 1) &= x^2 - x \\
w_{0,4} &= 0 \\
w_{1,4} &= x_1^2 - x_1 = -\frac{3}{16} \\
w_{2,4} &= x_2^2 - x_2 = -\frac{1}{4} \\
w_{3,4} &= x_3^2 - x_3 = -\frac{3}{16} \\
w_{4,4} &= 0
\end{aligned}$$

In 9×9 Matrix form

$$\begin{pmatrix} -4 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & -4 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -4 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & -4 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -4 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -4 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & -4 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -4 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} w_{1,1} \\ w_{2,1} \\ w_{3,1} \\ w_{1,2} \\ w_{2,2} \\ w_{3,2} \\ w_{1,3} \\ w_{2,3} \\ w_{3,3} \end{pmatrix} =$$

$$h^2 \begin{pmatrix} (x_1 y_1) \\ (x_2 y_1) \\ (x_3 y_1) \\ (x_1 y_2) \\ (x_2 y_2) \\ (x_3 y_2) \\ (x_1 y_3) \\ (x_2 y_3) \\ (x_3 y_3) \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -w_{1,0} \\ -w_{2,0} \\ -w_{3,0} \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ -w_{1,4} \\ -w_{2,4} \\ -w_{3,4} \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -w_{0,1} \\ 0 \\ -w_{4,1} \\ -w_{0,2} \\ 0 \\ -w_{4,2} \\ -w_{0,3} \\ 0 \\ -w_{4,3} \end{pmatrix}$$

In 9×9 Matrix form

$$\begin{pmatrix} -4 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & -4 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -4 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & -4 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -4 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -4 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & -4 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -4 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} w_{1,1} \\ w_{2,1} \\ w_{3,1} \\ w_{1,2} \\ w_{2,2} \\ w_{3,2} \\ w_{1,3} \\ w_{2,3} \\ w_{3,3} \end{pmatrix} =$$

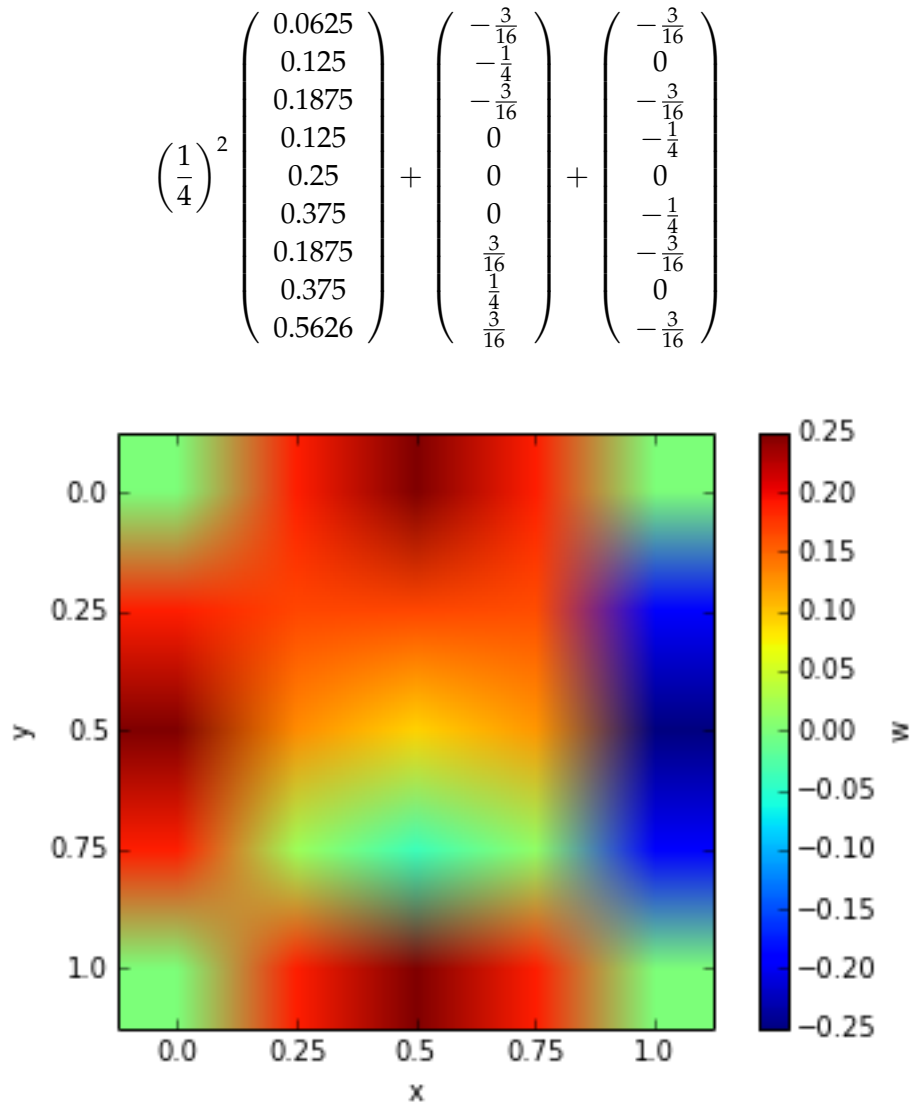


Figure 12.2.4: Numerical solution of the differential equation with non-zero boundary conditions

12.3 CONSISTENCY AND CONVERGENCE

We now ask how well the grid function determined by the five point scheme approximates the exact solution of the Poisson problem.

Definition Let L_h denote the finite difference approximation associated with the grid Δ_h having the mesh size h , to a partial differential operator L defined on a simply connected, open set $D \subset \mathbb{R}^2$. For a given function $\varphi \in C^\infty(D)$, the truncation error of L_h is

$$\tau_h(\mathbf{x}) = (L - L_h)\varphi(x)$$

The approximation L_h is consistent with L if

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \tau_h(x) = 0,$$

for all $\mathbf{x} \in D$ and all $\varphi \in C^\infty(D)$. The approximation is consistent to order p if $\tau_h(\mathbf{x}) = O(h^p)$. \circ

While we have seen this definition a few times it is always interesting how the terms are denoted and expressed but the ideas are always the same.

Proposition 12.3.1. *The five-point difference analog $-\nabla_h^2$ is consistent to order 2 with $-\nabla^2$.*

Proof. Pick $\varphi \in C^\infty(D)$, and let $(x, y) \in \Omega$ be a point such that $(x \pm h, y), (x, y \pm h) \in \Omega \cup \partial\Omega$. By the Taylor Theorem

$$\varphi(x \pm h, y) = \varphi(x, y) \pm h \frac{\partial \varphi}{\partial x}(x, y) + \frac{h^2}{2!} \frac{\partial^2 \varphi}{\partial x^2}(x, y) \pm \frac{h^3}{3!} \frac{\partial^3 \varphi}{\partial x^3}(x, y) + \frac{h^4}{4!} \frac{\partial^4 \varphi}{\partial x^4}(\zeta^\pm, y)$$

where $\zeta^\pm \in (x - h, x + h)$. Adding this pair of equation together and rearranging, we get

$$\frac{1}{h^2} [\varphi(x + h, y) - 2\varphi(x, y) + \varphi(x - h, y)] - \frac{\partial^2 \varphi}{\partial x^2}(x, y) = \frac{h^2}{4!} \left[\frac{\partial^4 \varphi}{\partial x^4}(\zeta^+, y) + \frac{\partial^4 \varphi}{\partial x^4}(\zeta^-, y) \right]$$

By the intermediate value theorem

$$\left[\frac{\partial^4 \varphi}{\partial x^4}(\zeta^+, y) + \frac{\partial^4 \varphi}{\partial x^4}(\zeta^-, y) \right] = 2 \frac{\partial^4 \varphi}{\partial x^4}(\zeta, y),$$

for some $\zeta \in (x - h, x + h)$. Therefore,

$$\delta_x^2(x, y) = \frac{\partial^2 \varphi}{\partial x^2}(x, y) + \frac{h^2}{4!} \frac{\partial^4 \varphi}{\partial x^4}(\zeta, y)$$

Similar reasoning shows that

$$\delta_y^2(x, y) = \frac{\partial^2 \varphi}{\partial y^2}(x, y) + \frac{h^2}{4!} \frac{\partial^4 \varphi}{\partial y^4}(x, \eta)$$

for some $\eta \in (y - h, y + h)$. We conclude that $\tau_h(x, y) = (\nabla - \nabla_h)\varphi(x, y) = O(h^2)$. \bullet \square

Consistency does not guarantee that the solution to the difference equations approximates the exact solution to the PDE.

Definition Let $L_h w(\mathbf{x}_j) = f(\mathbf{x}_j)$ be a finite difference approximation, defined on a grid mesh size h , to a PDE $LU(\mathbf{x}) = f(\mathbf{x})$ on a simply connected set $D \subset \mathbb{R}^n$. Assume that $w(x, y) = U(x, y)$ at all points

(x, y) on the boundary $\partial\Omega$. The finite difference scheme converges (or is convergent) if

$$\max_j |U(\mathbf{x}_j) - w(\mathbf{x}_j)| \rightarrow 0 \text{ as } h \rightarrow 0.$$

◦

For the five point scheme there is a direct connection between consistency and convergence. Underlying this connection is an argument based on the following principle:

Theorem 12.3.2. (DISCRETE MAXIMUM PRINCIPLE). *If $\nabla_h^2 V_{ij} \geq 0$ for all points $(x_i, y_j) \in \Omega_h$, then*

$$\max_{(x_i, y_j) \in \Omega_h} V_{ij} \leq \max_{(x_i, y_j) \in \partial\Omega_h} V_{ij}$$

If $\nabla_h^2 V_{ij} \leq 0$ for all points $(x_i, y_j) \in \Omega_h$, then

$$\min_{(x_i, y_j) \in \Omega_h} V_{ij} \geq \min_{(x_i, y_j) \in \partial\Omega_h} V_{ij}$$

In other words, a grid function V for which $\nabla_h^2 V$ is nonnegative on Ω_h attains its maximum on the boundary $\partial\Omega_h$ of the grid. Similarly, if $\nabla_h^2 V$ is nonpositive on Ω_h , then V attains its minimum on the boundary $\partial\Omega_h$.

Proof. The proof is by contradiction. We argue for the case $\nabla_h^2 V_{ij} \geq 0$, reasoning for the case $\nabla_h^2 V_{ij} \leq 0$ begin similar.

Assume that V attains its maximum value M at an interior grid point (x_I, y_J) and that $\max_{(x_i, y_j) \in \partial\Omega_h} V_{ij} < M$. The hypothesis $\nabla_h^2 V_{ij} \geq 0$ implies that

$$V_{IJ} \leq \frac{1}{4}(V_{I+1J} + V_{I-1J} + V_{IJ+1} + V_{IJ-1})$$

This cannot hold unless

$$V_{I+1J} = V_{I-1J} = V_{IJ+1} = V_{IJ-1} = M.$$

If any of the corresponding grid points $(x_{I+1}, y_L), (x_{I-1}, y_L), (x_I, y_{L+1}), (x_I, y_{L-1})$ lies in $\partial\Omega_h$, then we have reached the desired contradiction.

Otherwise, we continue arguing in this way until we conclude that $V_{I+iJ+j} = M$ for some point $(x_{I+iJ+j}) \in \partial\Omega$, which again gives a contradiction. • □

This leads to interesting results

Proposition 12.3.3. 1. *The zero grid function (for which $U_{ij} = 0$ for all $(x_i, y_j) \in \Omega_h \cup \partial\Omega_h$ is the only solution to the finite difference problem*

$$\nabla_h^2 U_{ij} = 0 \text{ for } (x_i, y_j) \in \Omega_h,$$

$$U_{ij} = 0 \text{ for } (x_i, y_j) \in \partial\Omega_h.$$

2. For prescribed grid functions f_{ij} and g_{ij} , there exists a unique solution to the problem

$$\nabla_h^2 U_{ij} = f_{ij} \text{ for } (x_i, y_j) \in \Omega_h,$$

$$U_{ij} = g_{ij} \text{ for } (x_i, y_j) \in \partial\Omega_h.$$

Definition For any grid function $V : \Omega_h \cup \partial\Omega_h \rightarrow R$,

$$\|V\|_\Omega = \max_{(x_i, y_j) \in \Omega_h} |V_{ij}|,$$

$$\|V\|_{\partial\Omega} = \max_{(x_i, y_j) \in \partial\Omega_h} |V_{ij}|.$$

◦

Lemma 12.3.4. *If the grid function $V : \Omega_h \cup \partial\Omega_h \rightarrow R$ satisfies the boundary condition $V_{ij} = 0$ for $(x_i, y_j) \in \partial\Omega_h$, then*

$$\|V\|_\Omega \leq \frac{1}{8} \|\nabla_h^2 V\|_\Omega$$

Proof. Let $v = \|\nabla_h^2 V\|_\Omega$. Clearly for all points $(x_i, y_j) \in \Omega_h$,

$$-v \leq \nabla_h^2 V_{ij} \leq v \quad (66)$$

Now we define $W : \Omega_h \cup \partial\Omega_h \rightarrow R$ by setting $W_{ij} = \frac{1}{4}[(x_i - \frac{1}{2})^2 + (y_j - \frac{1}{2})^2]$, which is nonnegative. Also $\nabla_h^2 W_{ij} = 1$ and that $\|W\|_{\partial\Omega} = \frac{1}{8}$. The inequality (66) implies that, for all points $(x_i, y_j) \in \Omega_h$,

$$\nabla_h^2 (V_{ij} + vW_{ij}) \geq 0$$

$$\nabla_h^2 (V_{ij} - vW_{ij}) \leq 0$$

By the discrete minimum principle and the fact that V vanishes on $\partial\Omega_h$

$$V_{ij} \leq V_{ij} + vW_{ij} \leq v\|W\|_{\partial\Omega}$$

$$V_{ij} \geq V_{ij} - vW_{ij} \geq -v\|W\|_{\partial\Omega}$$

Since $\|W\|_{\partial\Omega} = \frac{1}{8}$

$$\|V\|_\Omega \leq \frac{1}{8}v = \frac{1}{8}\|\nabla_h^2 V\|_\Omega$$

•

□

Finally we prove that the five point scheme for the Poisson equation is convergent.

Theorem 12.3.5. *Let U be a solution to the Poisson equation and let w be the grid function that satisfies the discrete analog*

$$-\nabla_h^2 w_{ij} = f_{ij} \text{ for } (x_i, y_j) \in \Omega_h,$$

$$w_{ij} = g_{ij} \text{ for } (x_i, y_j) \in \partial\Omega_h.$$

Then there exists a positive constant K such that

$$\|U - w\|_{\Omega} \leq KMh^2$$

where

$$M = \left\{ \left\| \frac{\partial^4 U}{\partial x^4} \right\|_{\infty}, \left\| \frac{\partial^4 U}{\partial x^3 \partial y} \right\|_{\infty}, \dots, \left\| \frac{\partial^4 U}{\partial y^4} \right\|_{\infty} \right\}$$

The statement of the theorem assumes that $U \in C^4(\bar{\Omega})$. This assumption holds if f and g are smooth enough.

Proof. Following from the proof of the Proposition we have

$$(\nabla_h^2 - \nabla^2)U_{ij} = \frac{h^2}{12} \left[\frac{\partial^4 U}{\partial x^4}(\zeta_i, y_j) + \frac{\partial^4 U}{\partial y^4}(x_i, \eta_j) \right]$$

for some $\zeta \in (x_{i-1}, x_{i+1})$ and $\eta_j \in (y_{j-1}, y_{j+1})$. Therefore,

$$-\nabla_h^2 U_{ij} = f_{ij} - \frac{h^2}{12} \left[\frac{\partial^4 U}{\partial x^4}(\zeta_i, y_j) + \frac{\partial^4 U}{\partial y^4}(x_i, \eta_j) \right].$$

If we subtract from this the identity equation $-\nabla_h^2 w_{ij} = f_{ij}$ and note that $U - w$ vanishes on $\partial\Omega_h$, we find that

$$\nabla_h^2 (U_{ij} - w_{ij}) = \frac{h^2}{12} \left[\frac{\partial^4 U}{\partial x^4}(\zeta_i, y_j) + \frac{\partial^4 U}{\partial y^4}(x_i, \eta_j) \right].$$

It follows that

$$\|U - w\|_{\Omega} \leq \frac{1}{8} \|\nabla_h^2 (U - w)\|_{\Omega} \leq KMh^2$$

□

ELLIPTIC EQUATIONS QUESTIONS

1. a) Use the central difference formula for the second derivative

$$f''(x_0) = \frac{f(x_0 + h) - 2f(x_0) + f(x_0 - h)}{h^2} + \mathcal{O}(h^2)$$

to derive the explicit numerical scheme

$$w_{j-1,k} + w_{j+1,k} + w_{j,k-1} + w_{j,k+1} - 4w_{j,k} = h^2 f_{j,k}$$

for the Elliptic equation

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} = f(x, y)$$

on the rectangular domain

$$\Omega = \{(x, y) \mid a \leq x \leq b, c \leq y \leq d\}.$$

[10 marks]

- b) Consider the problem

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} = 0$$

on the rectangular domain

$$\Omega = \{(x, y) \mid 0 \leq x \leq 1, 0 \leq y \leq 1\},$$

with the boundary conditions

$$u(x, 0) = 4x^2 - 4x + 1, \quad u(x, 1) = 4x^2 - 4x + 1,$$

$$u(0, y) = 4y^2 - 4y + 1, \quad u(1, y) = 4y^2 - 4y + 1.$$

Taking $N = 4$ steps in the x -direction and $M = 4$ steps in the y -direction, set up and write in matrix form (but do not solve) the corresponding systems of finite difference equations.

[23 marks]

2. a) Use the central difference formula for the second derivative

$$f''(x_0) = \frac{f(x_0 + h) - 2f(x_0) + f(x_0 - h)}{h^2} + \mathcal{O}(h^2)$$

to derive the explicit numerical scheme

$$w_{j-1,k} + w_{j+1,k} + w_{j,k-1} + w_{j,k+1} - 4w_{j,k} = h^2 f_{j,k}$$

for the Elliptic equation

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} = f(x, y)$$

on the rectangular domain

$$\Omega = \{(x, y) \mid a \leq x \leq b, c \leq y \leq d\}.$$

[10 marks]

- b) Consider the problem

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} = xy + x^2$$

on the rectangular domain

$$\Omega = \{(x, y) \mid 0 \leq x \leq 1, 0 \leq y \leq 1\},$$

with the boundary conditions

$$u(x, 0) = 0, \quad u(x, 1) = 0,$$

$$u(0, y) = 0, \quad u(1, y) = 0.$$

Taking $N = 4$ steps in the x -direction and $M = 4$ steps in the y -direction, set up and write in matrix form (but do not solve) the corresponding systems of finite difference equations.

[23 marks]

3. a) Use the central difference formula for the second derivative

$$f''(x_0) = \frac{f(x_0 + h) - 2f(x_0) + f(x_0 - h)}{h^2} + \mathcal{O}(h^2)$$

to derive the explicit numerical scheme

$$w_{j-1,k} + w_{j+1,k} + w_{j,k-1} + w_{j,k+1} - 4w_{j,k} = h^2 f_{j,k}$$

for the Elliptic equation

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} = f(x, y)$$

on the rectangular domain

$$\Omega = \{(x, y) \mid a \leq x \leq b, c \leq y \leq d\}.$$

[10 marks]

- b) Consider the problem

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} = y^2$$

on the rectangular domain

$$\Omega = \{(x, y) \mid 0 \leq x \leq 1, 0 \leq y \leq 1\},$$

with the boundary conditions

$$u(x, 0) = x, \quad u(x, 1) = x,$$

$$u(0, y) = 0, \quad u(1, y) = 1.$$

Taking $N = 4$ steps in the x -direction and $M = 4$ steps in the y -direction, set up and write in matrix form (but do not solve) the corresponding systems of finite difference equations.

[23 marks]

 HYPERBOLIC EQUATIONS

First-order scalar equation

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial U}{\partial t} &= -a \frac{\partial U}{\partial x} & x \in R \quad t > 0 \\ U(x, 0) &= U_0(x) & x \in R \end{aligned} \quad (67)$$

where a is a positive real number. Its solution is given by

$$U(x, t) = U_0(x - at) \quad t \geq 0$$

and represents a traveling wave with velocity a . The curves $(x(t), t)$ in the plane (x, t) are the characteristic curves. They are the straight lines $x(t) = x_0 + at$, $t > 0$. The solution of (67) remains constant along them.

For the more general problem

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial U}{\partial t} + a \frac{\partial U}{\partial x} + a_0 &= f & x \in R \quad t > 0 \\ U(x, 0) &= U_0(x) & x \in R \end{aligned} \quad (68)$$

where a , a_0 and f are given functions of the variables (x, t) , the characteristic curves are still defined as before. In this case the solutions of (68) satisfy along the characteristics the following differential equation

$$\frac{du}{dt} = f - a_0 u \text{ on } (x(t), t)$$

Example 41

Burgers equation

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + u \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = 0$$

This is a non-trivial non-linear hyperbolic equation.
Taking initial condition

$$u(x, 0) = u_0(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & x_0 \leq 0 \\ 1 - x & 0 \leq x_0 \leq 1 \\ 0 & x_0 \geq 1 \end{cases}$$

the characteristic line issuing from the point $(x_0, 0)$ is given by

$$x(t) = x_0 + tu_0(x_0) = \begin{cases} x_0 + t & x_0 \leq 0 \\ x_0 + t(1 - x_0) & 0 \leq x_0 \leq 1 \\ x_0 & x_0 \geq 1 \end{cases}$$

14.1 THE WAVE EQUATION

Consider the second-order hyperbolic equation

$$\frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial t^2} - \gamma \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial x^2} = f \quad x \in (\alpha, \beta), \quad t > 0 \quad (69)$$

with initial data

$$U(x, 0) = u_0(x) \text{ and } \frac{\partial U}{\partial t}(x, 0) = v_0(x), \quad x \in (\alpha, \beta)$$

and boundary data

$$U(\alpha, t) = 0 \text{ and } U(\beta, t) = 0, \quad t > 0$$

In this case, U may represent the transverse displacement of an elastic vibrating string of length $\beta - \alpha$, fixed at the endpoints and γ is a coefficient depending on the specific mass of the string and its tension. The string is subject to a vertical force of density f .

The functions $u_0(x)$ and $v_0(x)$ denote respectively the initial displacement and initial velocity of the string.
The change of variables

$$\omega_1 = \frac{\partial U}{\partial x}, \quad \omega_2 = \frac{\partial U}{\partial t}$$

transforms (69) into

$$\frac{\partial \hat{\omega}}{\partial t} + A \frac{\partial \hat{\omega}}{\partial x} = \mathbf{0}$$

where

$$\hat{\omega} = \begin{bmatrix} \omega_1 \\ \omega_2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Since the initial conditions are $\omega_1(x, 0) = u'_0(x)$ and $\omega_2(x, 0) = v_0(x)$.

Aside

Notice that replacing $\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2}$ by t^2 , $\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}$ by x^2 and f by 1, the wave equation becomes

$$t^2 - \gamma^2 x^2 = 1$$

which represents an hyperbola in (x, t) plane. Proceeding analogously in the case of the heat equation we end up with

$$t - x^2 = 1$$

which represents a parabola in the (x, t) plane. Finally, for the Poisson equation we get

$$x^2 + y^2 = 1$$

which represents an ellipse in the (x, y) plane.

Due to the geometric interpretation above, the corresponding differential operators are classified as hyperbolic, parabolic and elliptic.

14.2 FINITE DIFFERENCE METHOD FOR HYPERBOLIC EQUATIONS

As always we discretise the domain by space-time finite difference. To this aim, the half-plane $\{(x, t) : -\infty < x < \infty, t > 0\}$ is discretised by choosing a spatial grid size Δx , a temporal step Δt and the grid points (x_j, t^n) as follows

$$x_j = j\Delta x \quad j \in \mathbb{Z}, \quad t^n = n\Delta t \quad n \in \mathbb{N}$$

and let

$$\lambda = \frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x}.$$

14.2.1 Discretisation of the scalar equation

Here are some explicit methods

- Forward Euler/centered

$$u_j^{n+1} = u_j^n - \frac{\lambda}{2} a(u_{j+1}^n - u_{j-1}^n)$$

- Lax-Fredrichs

$$u_j^{n+1} = \frac{u_{j+1}^n + u_{j-1}^n}{2} - \frac{\lambda}{2} a(u_{j+1}^n - u_{j-1}^n)$$

- Lax-Wendroff

$$u_j^{n+1} = u_j^n - \frac{\lambda}{2} a(u_{j+1}^n - u_{j-1}^n) + \frac{\lambda^2}{2} a^2(u_{j+1}^n - 2u_j^n + u_{j-1}^n)$$

- Upwind

$$u_j^{n+1} = u_j^n - \frac{\lambda}{2}(u_{j+1}^n - u_{j-1}^n) + \frac{\lambda}{2}|a|(u_{j+1}^n - 2u_j^n + u_{j-1}^n)$$

The last three methods can be obtained from the forward Euler/-centered method by adding a term proportional to a numerical approximation of a second derivative term so that they can be written in the equivalent form

$$u_j^{n+1} = u_j^n - \frac{\lambda}{2}a(u_{j+1}^n - u_{j-1}^n) + \frac{1}{2}k \frac{(u_{j+1}^n - 2u_j^n + u_{j-1}^n)}{(\Delta x)^2}$$

where k is an artificial viscosity term.

An example of an implicit method is the backward Euler/ centered scheme

$$u_j^{n+1} + \frac{\lambda}{2}a(u_{j+1}^{n+1} - u_{j-1}^{n+1}) = u_j^n$$

14.3 ANALYSIS OF THE FINITE DIFFERENCE METHODS

14.4 CONSISTENCY

A numerical method is convergent if

$$\lim_{\Delta t, \Delta x \rightarrow 0} \max_{j,n} |U(x_j, t^n) - w_j^n|$$

The local truncation error at x_j, t^n is defined as

$$\tau_j^n = L(U_j^n)$$

the truncation error is

$$\tau(\Delta t, \Delta x) = \max_{j,n} |\tau_j^n|$$

When $\tau(\Delta t, \Delta x)$ goes to zero as Δt and Δx tend to zero independently is said to be consistent.

14.5 STABILITY

14.6 COURANT FREIDRICH LEWY CONDITION

A method is said to be stable if, for any T there exist a constant $C_T > 0$ and δ_0 such that

$$\|\mathbf{u}^n\|_{\Delta} \leq C_T \|\mathbf{u}^0\|_{\Delta}$$

for any n such that $n\Delta t \leq T$ and for any $\Delta t, \Delta x$ such that $0 < \Delta t \leq \delta_0, 0 < \Delta x \leq \delta_0$. We have denoted by $\|\cdot\|_{\Delta}$ a suitable discrete norm.

Forward Euler/centered

$$u_j^{n+1} = u_j^n - \frac{\lambda}{2}a(u_{j+1}^n - u_{j-1}^n)$$

Truncation error

$$O(\Delta t, (\Delta x)^2)$$

For an explicit method to be stable we need

$$|a\lambda| = \left| a \frac{\delta t}{\delta x} \right| \leq 1$$

this is known as the Courant Freidrich Lewy condition.

Using Von Neumann stability analysis we can show that the method is stable under the Courant Freidrich Lewy condition.

For example

$$u_j^n = e^{i\beta j\Delta x} \xi^n$$

where

$$\xi = e^{\alpha\Delta t}$$

It is sufficient to show

$$|\xi| \leq 1$$

$$\xi^{n+1} e^{i\beta(j)\Delta x} = \xi^n e^{i\beta(j)\Delta x} - \frac{\lambda}{2}a(\xi^n e^{i\beta(j+1)\Delta x} - \xi^n e^{i\beta(j-1)\Delta x})$$

$$\xi = 1 - \frac{\lambda}{2}a(e^{i\beta\Delta x} - e^{-i\beta\Delta x})$$

$$\xi = 1 - \frac{\lambda}{2}a(2\cos(\beta\Delta x))$$

$$\xi = 1 - \frac{\lambda}{a}(\cos(\beta\Delta x))$$

therefore the method is stable for the Courant Freidrich Lewy.

VARIATIONAL METHODS

Variational methods are based on the fact that the solutions of some

$$\begin{aligned} -(p(x)u'(x))' + q(x)u(x) &= g(x, u(x)) \\ u(a) = \alpha \quad u(b) &= \beta \end{aligned} \quad (70)$$

Under the assumptions

$$\begin{aligned} p &\in C^1[a, b], & p(x) &\geq p_0 > 0 \\ q &\in C^1[a, b], & q(x) &\geq 0 \\ g &\in C^1([a, b] \times \mathbb{R}), & g_u(x, u) &\leq \lambda_0 \end{aligned} \quad (71)$$

If $u(x)$ is the solution of (70), then $y(x) = u(x) - l(x)$ with

$$l(x) = \alpha \frac{b-x}{b-a} + \beta \frac{a-x}{a-b} \quad l(a) = \alpha, \quad l(b) = \beta$$

is the solution of a boundary value problem

$$\begin{aligned} -(p(x)y'(x))' + q(x)y(x) &= f(x) \\ y(a) = 0 \quad y(b) &= 0 \end{aligned} \quad (72)$$

with vanishing boundary values. Without loss of generality we can just consider problems of the form (72).

(D) Classical Problem

$$\begin{aligned} -(p(x)u'(x))' + q(x)u(x) &= f(x) \\ u(a) = 0 \quad u(b) &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

Now we relax the assumptions on the problem. We let $f \in L_2([0, 1])$, and look for a solution

$$u(x) \in D_L = \{u \in C^2[a, b] \mid u(a) = 0, u(b) = 0\}$$

We form

$$\int_a^b [-(p(x)u'(x))' + q(x)u(x)]v(x)dx = \int_a^b f(x)v(x)dx$$

where $v \in D_L$. We integrate by parts to get

$$\int_a^b [p(x)u'(x)v'(x) + q(x)u(x)v(x)]dx = \int_a^b f(x)v(x)dx$$

We make the definition

Definition (Bilinear Form)

$$a(u, v) = \int_a^b [p(x)u'(x)v'(x) + q(x)u(x)v(x)]dx$$

The *Weak form* of the ODE problem (D) is then given by

(W) Weak Form Let $f \in L_2([a, b])$. Find $u \in D_L$ such that

$$a(u, v) = (f, v).$$

Equivalently, the *Variational or Minimisation* form of the problem is given by

Where

$$(f, v) = \int_a^b f(x)v(x)dx$$

(M) Variational/Minimization form: Let $f \in L_2([a, b])$ and let $F(v) = \frac{1}{2}a(v, v) - (f, v)$. Find $v \in D_L$ such that

$$F(u) \leq F(v) \quad \text{all } v \in D_L$$

ie find the function u that minimizes F over D_L .

Theorem 15.0.1. *We have the following relationships between the solutions to the three problems (D), (W) and (M).*

1. *If the function u solves (D), then u solves (W).*
2. *The function u solves (W) if and only if u solves (M).*
3. *If $f \in C([0, 1])$ and $u \in C^2([0, 1])$ solves (W), then u solves (D).*

Proof. 1. Let u be the solution to (D); then u solves (W) is obvious, since W derives directly from (D).

2. a) Show **(W) \Rightarrow (M)**.

Let u solve (W), and define $v(x) = u(x) + z(x)$, $u, z \in D_L$. By linearity

$$\begin{aligned} F(v) &= \frac{1}{2}a(u + z, u + z) - (f, u + z) \\ &= F(u) + \frac{1}{2}a(z, z) + a(u, z) - (f, z) \\ &= F(u) + \frac{1}{2}a(z, z) \end{aligned}$$

which implies that $F(v) \geq F(u)$, and therefore u solves (M).

b) Show **(W)** \Leftrightarrow **(M)**.

Let u solve **(M)** and choose $\varepsilon \in \mathbb{R}$, $v \in D_L$. Then $F(u) \leq F(u + \varepsilon v)$, since $u + \varepsilon v \in D_L$. Now $F(u + \varepsilon v)$ is a quadratic form in ε and its minimum occurs at $\varepsilon = 0$ ie

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \left. \frac{dF(u + \varepsilon v)}{d\varepsilon} \right|_{\varepsilon=0} \\ &= a(u, v) - (f, v) \end{aligned}$$

It follows that u solves **(W)**.

3. Is immediate. □

15.1 RITZ -GALERKIN METHOD

This is a classical approach which we exploit to find "discrete" approximation to the problem **(W)** / **(M)**. We look for a solution u_S in a finite dimensional subspace S of D_L such that u_S is an approximation to the solution of the continuous problem.

$$u_S = u_1\phi_1 + u_2\phi_2 + \dots + u_n\phi_n$$

(W_S) Discrete Weak Form Find $u_S \in S = \text{span}\{\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n\}$, $n < \infty$ such that

$$a(u_S, v) = (f, v).$$

$$u \approx u_S = u_1\phi_1 + u_2\phi_2 + \dots + u_n\phi_n$$

(M_S) Discrete Variational/Minimization form: Find $u_S \in S = \text{span}\{\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n\}$, $n < \infty$ such that $F(u_S) = \frac{1}{2}a(u_S, u_S) - (f, u_S)$. Find $v \in D_L$ such that

$$F(u_S) \leq F(v) \quad \text{all } v \in S$$

Theorem 15.1.1. Given $f \in L_2([0, 1])$, then (W_S) has a unique solution.

Proof. We write $u_S = \sum_1^n u_j \phi_j(x)$ and look for constants u_j , $j = 1, \dots, n$ to solve the discrete problem. We define

$$A = \{A_{ij}\} = \{a(\phi_i, \phi_j)\} = \int_a^b [p(x)\phi_i' \phi_j' + q(x)\phi_i \phi_j] dx$$

and

$$\bar{F} = \{F_j\} = \{(f, \phi_j)\} = \left\{ \int_a^b f \phi_j dx \right\}$$

Then we require

$$a(u_S, v) = a\left(\sum_1^n u_j \phi_j(x), v\right) = (f, v) \quad \text{all } v \in S$$

Hence, for each basis function $\phi_i \in S$ we must have

$$a(u_S, \phi_i) = a\left(\sum_1^n u_j \phi_j(x), \phi_i\right) = (f, \phi_i) \text{ all } i = 1, \dots, n \in S$$

ie

$$\begin{bmatrix} a(\phi_1, \phi_1) & \dots & a(\phi_n, \phi_1) \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a(\phi_1, \phi_n) & \dots & a(\phi_n, \phi_n) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u_1 \\ \vdots \\ u_n \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} (f, \phi_1) \\ \vdots \\ (f, \phi_n) \end{bmatrix}$$

ie

$$A\bar{u} = \bar{F}$$

Hence u_S is found by the solution to a matrix equation. We now show existence/uniqueness of the solution to the algebraic problem. We show by contradiction that A is full-rank ie that the only solution to $A\bar{u} = 0$ is $\bar{u} = 0$.

We suppose that there exists a vector $\bar{v} = \{v_j\} \neq 0$ such that $A\bar{v} = 0$ and construct $v(x) = \sum_1^n v_j \phi_j \in S$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} A\bar{v} = 0 &\Leftrightarrow \sum_j a(\phi_j, \phi_k) v_j = a(v, \phi_k) = 0 \text{ all } k \\ &\Leftrightarrow \sum_k a(v, \phi_k) v_j = a(v, \sum v_k \phi_k) = a(v, v) = 0 \\ &\Leftrightarrow v = 0 \end{aligned}$$

Therefore a contradiction. \square

Classically, in the Ritz-Galerkin method, the basis functions are chosen to be continuous functions over the entire interval $[a, b]$, for example, $\{\sin(mx), \cos(mx)\}$ give us trigonometric polynomial approximations to the solutions of the ODEs.

15.2 FINITE ELEMENT

We choose the basis functions $\{\phi_i\}_1^n$ to be piecewise polynomials with compact support. In the simplest case ϕ_i is linear. We divide the region into n intervals or "elements",

$$a = x_0 < x_1 < \dots < x_n = b$$

and let E_i denote the element $[x_{i-1}, x_i]$, $h_i = x_i - x_{i-1}$.

Definition Let $S^h \subset D$ be the space of functions such that $v(x) \in [0, 1]$, $v(x)$ is linear on E_i and $v(a) = v(b) = 0$ ie

$$S^h = \{v(x) : \text{piecewise linear on } [0, 1], v(a) = v(b) = 0\}$$

The basis functions $\phi_i(x)$ for S^h are defined such that $\phi_i(x)$ is linear on E_i , E_{i+1} and $\phi_i(x_j) = \delta_{ij}$. DRAWING HAT
We now show that the hat functions ϕ_i form a basis for the space S^h .

Lemma 15.2.1. *The set of functions $\{\phi_i\}_i^n$ is a basis for the space S^h .*

Proof. We show first that the set $\{\phi_i\}_1^n$ is linearly independent. If $\sum_1^n c_i \phi_i(x) = 0$ for all $x \in [a, b]$, then taking $x = x_j$, implies $c_j = 0$ for each value of j , and hence the functions are independent.

To show $S^h = \text{span}\{\phi_i\}$, we only need to show that

$$v(x) = v_I = \sum v_j \phi_j, \text{ all } v(x) \in S^h$$

This is proved by construction. Since $(v - v_I)$ is linear on $[x_{i-1}, x_i]$ and $v - v_I = 0$ at all points x_j , it follows that $v = v_I$ on E_i . \square

We now consider the matrix $A\hat{u} = \hat{F}$ in the case where the basis functions are chosen to be the "hat functions". In this case the elements of A can be found We have

$$\phi_i = 0, \phi'_i = 0, \text{ for } x \notin [x_{i-1}, x_{i+1}) = E_i \cup E_{i+1}$$

$$\phi_i = \frac{x - x_{i-1}}{x_i - x_{i-1}} = \frac{1}{h_i}(x - x_{i-1}), \phi'_i = \frac{1}{h_i}, \text{ on } E_i$$

and

$$\phi_i = \frac{x_{i+1} - x}{x_{i+1} - x_i} = \frac{1}{h_{i+1}}(x_{i+1} - x), \phi'_i = \frac{-1}{h_{i+1}}, \text{ on } E_{i+1}$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} A_{i,i} &= \int_{x_{i-1}}^{x_i} \frac{1}{h_i^2} p(x) dx + \int_{x_i}^{x_{i+1}} \frac{1}{h_{i+1}^2} p(x) dx \\ &\quad + \int_{x_{i-1}}^{x_i} \frac{1}{h_i^2} (x - x_{i-1})^2 q(x) dx + \int_{x_i}^{x_{i+1}} \frac{1}{h_{i+1}^2} (x_{i+1} - x)^2 q(x) dx \end{aligned}$$

$$A_{i,i+1} = \int_{x_i}^{x_{i+1}} \frac{-1}{h_{i+1}^2} p(x) dx + \int_{x_i}^{x_{i+1}} \frac{1}{h_{i+1}^2} (x_{i+1} - x)(x - x_i) q(x) dx$$

$$A_{i,i-1} = \int_{x_{i-1}}^{x_i} \frac{-1}{h_i^2} p(x) dx + \int_{x_i}^{x_{i+1}} \frac{1}{h_i^2} (x_i - x)(x - x_{i-1}) q(x) dx$$

and

$$F_i = \int_{x_{i-1}}^{x_i} \frac{1}{h_i} (x - x_{i-1}) f(x) dx + \int_{x_i}^{x_{i+1}} \frac{1}{h_{i+1}} (x_{i+1} - x) f(x) dx$$

15.3 ERROR

Lemma 15.3.1. *Assume u_S solves (\mathbf{W}_S) . Then*

$$a(u - u_S, w) = 0, \text{ for all } x \in S$$

Proof.

$$a(u_S, w) = (f, w)$$

$$a(u, w) = (f, w)$$

for all $w \in S$. Since a is bilinear, taking the differences gives

$$a(u - u_S, w) = 0$$

□

The error bounds we are interested in will be in term of the energy norm,

$$||v||_E = [a(v, v)]^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

for all $v \in D_L$. The function satisfies the properties:

$$||\alpha v||_E = \alpha ||v||_E, \quad ||v + z||_E \leq ||v||_E + ||z||_E$$

Theorem 15.3.2. *To show u_S is the best fit we show that*

$$||u - u_S||_E = \min_{v \in S} ||u - v||_E$$

Proof. By the Cauchy-Schwartz Lemma, we have $|a(u, v)| \leq ||u||_E ||v||_E$. Let $w = u_S - v \in S$. The using the previous lemma we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} ||u - u_S||_E^2 &= a(u - u_S, u - u_S) \\ &\leq a(u - u_S, u - u_S) + a(u - u_S, w) \\ &\leq a(u - u_S, u - u_S + w) = a(u - u_S, u - v) \\ &\leq ||u - u_S||_E ||u - v||_E \end{aligned}$$

If $||u - u_S||_E = 0$, then the theorem holds. Otherwise

$$\min ||u - v||_E \leq ||u - u_S||_E \leq \min ||u - v||_E$$

qed. □

Theorem 15.3.3. *Error bounds*

$$||u - u_S||_E \leq Ch ||u''||_\infty$$

where C is a constant.

Proof. First from the previous theorem we have that

$$||u - u_S||_E = \min_{v \in S} ||u - v||_E \leq ||u - u_I||_E$$

We look for a bound on $||u - u_I||_E$, where

$$u_I(x) = \sum_j \bar{u}_j \phi_j, \quad \bar{u}_j = u(x_j).$$

We assume that

$$u_S(x) = \sum_j u_j \phi_j$$

where $\mathbf{u} = \{u_j\}$ solves $A\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{F}$. We define $e = u - u_I$. Since $u_I \in S$ implies that u_I is piecewise linear, then $u_I'' = 0$. Therefore $e'' = u''$.

Looking at the subinterval $[x_i, x_{i+1}]$ The Schwarz inequality yields the estimate

$$\begin{aligned} (e)^2 &\leq \int_{x_i}^x 1^2 d\zeta \int_{x_i}^x (e'(\zeta))^2 d\zeta \\ &\leq (x - x_i) \int_{x_i}^x (e'(\zeta))^2 d\zeta \\ &\leq h_i \int_{x_i}^{x_{i+1}} (e'(\zeta))^2 d\zeta \end{aligned}$$

and thus

$$\|e\|_\infty^2 \leq h_i \int_{x_i}^{x_{i+1}} (e'(\zeta))^2 d\zeta \leq h_i^2 \|e'\|_\infty^2$$

Similarly,

$$\begin{aligned} (e')^2 &\leq \int_{x_i}^x 1^2 d\zeta \int_{x_i}^x (e''(\zeta))^2 d\zeta \\ &\leq (x - x_i) \int_{x_i}^x (e''(\zeta))^2 d\zeta \\ &\leq h_i \int_{x_i}^{x_{i+1}} (e''(\zeta))^2 d\zeta \end{aligned}$$

and thus

$$\|e'\|_\infty^2 \leq h_i \int_{x_i}^{x_{i+1}} (e''(\zeta))^2 d\zeta \leq h_i^2 \|e''\|_\infty^2$$

Finally we also have

$$\begin{aligned} a(e, e) &= \int_{x_i}^{x_{i+1}} (p(x)[e']^2 + q(x)[e(x)]^2) dx \\ &\leq \|p\|_\infty \int_{x_i}^{x_{i+1}} [e']^2 + \|q\|_\infty \int_{x_i}^{x_{i+1}} [e(x)]^2 dx \\ &\leq \|p\|_\infty h_i^2 \|e''\|_\infty^2 + \|q\|_\infty h_i^2 \|e'\|_\infty^2 \\ &\leq \|p\|_\infty h_i^2 \|e''\|_\infty^2 + \|q\|_\infty h_i^4 \|e'\|_\infty^2 \\ &\leq Ch_i^2 \|u''\|_\infty^2 \end{aligned}$$

$$\|u - u_S\|_E = \min_{v \in S} \|u - v\|_E \leq \|u - u_I\|_E \leq Ch \|u''\|_\infty$$

where $h = \max\{h_i\}$. □

PROBLEM SHEET

1. a) State the 3 classes and conditions of 2nd order Partial Differential Equations defined by the characteristic curves.
- b) Given the non-dimensional form of the heat equation

$$\frac{\partial U}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial x^2}.$$

supply sample boundary conditions to specify this problem.

Write a fully implicit scheme to solve this partial differential equation.

- c) Derive the local truncation error for the fully implicit method, for the heat equation.
 - d) Show that the method is unconditionally stable using von Neumann's method.
2. a) State the 3 classes and conditions of 2nd order Partial Differential Equations defined by the characteristic curves.
 - b) Given the non-dimensional form of the heat equation

$$\frac{\partial U}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial x^2},$$

supply sample boundary conditions to specify this problem.

Write an explicit scheme to solve this partial differential equation.

- c) Derive the local truncation error for the explicit method, for the heat equation.
 - d) Show that the method is consistent, convergent and stable for $\frac{k}{h^2} < \frac{1}{2}$, where k is the step-size in the t direction and h is the step-size in the x direction.
3. a) State the 3 classes and conditions of 2nd order Partial Differential Equations defined by the characteristic curves.

- b) Given the non-dimensional form of the heat equation

$$\frac{\partial U}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial x^2},$$

supply sample boundary conditions to specify this problem.

Write an the Crank-Nicholson method to solve this partial differential equation.

- c) Derive the local truncation error for the Crank-Nicholson method, for the heat equation.

- d) Show that the method is unconditionally stable using von Neumann's method.

4. a) Approximate the Poisson equation

$$-\nabla^2 U(x, y) = f(x, y) \quad (x, y) \in \Omega = (0, 1) \times (0, 1)$$

with boundary conditions

$$U(x, y) = g(x, y) \quad (x, y) \in \partial\Omega - \text{boundary}$$

using the five point method. Sketch how the finite difference scheme may be rewritten in the form $Ax = b$, where A is a sparse $N^2 \times N^2$ matrix, b is an N^2 component matrix and x is an N^2 component vector of unknowns. (Assume your 2d discretised grid contains N components in the x and y direction).

- b) Prove (DISCRETE MAXIMUM PRINCIPLE). if $\nabla_h^2 V_{ij} \geq 0$ for all points $(x_i, y_j) \in \Omega_h$, then

$$\max_{(x_i, y_j) \in \Omega_h} V_{ij} \leq \max_{(x_i, y_j) \in \partial\Omega_h} V_{ij}$$

If $\nabla_h^2 V_{ij} \leq 0$ for all points $(x_i, y_j) \in \Omega_h$, then

$$\min_{(x_i, y_j) \in \Omega_h} V_{ij} \geq \min_{(x_i, y_j) \in \partial\Omega_h} V_{ij}$$

- c) Hence prove:

Let U be a solution to the Poisson equation and let w be the grid function that satisfies the discrete analog

$$-\nabla_h^2 w_{ij} = f_{ij} \quad \text{for } (x_i, y_j) \in \Omega_h,$$

$$w_{ij} = g_{ij} \quad \text{for } (x_i, y_j) \in \partial\Omega_h.$$

Then there exists a positive constant K such that

$$\|U - w\|_{\Omega} \leq KMh^2$$

where

$$M = \left\{ \left\| \frac{\partial^4 U}{\partial x^4} \right\|_{\infty}, \left\| \frac{\partial^4 U}{\partial x^3 \partial y} \right\|_{\infty}, \dots, \left\| \frac{\partial^4 U}{\partial y^4} \right\|_{\infty} \right\}$$

You may assume:

Lemma

If the grid function $V : \Omega_h \cup \partial\Omega_h \rightarrow R$ satisfies the boundary condition $V_{ij} = 0$ for $(x_i, y_j) \in \partial\Omega_h$, then

$$\|V\|_{\Omega} \leq \frac{1}{8} \|\nabla_h^2 V\|_{\Omega}$$

5. a) For a finite difference scheme approximating a partial differential equation of the form

$$\frac{\partial U}{\partial t} = -a \frac{\partial U}{\partial x} + f(x, t), \quad x \in R, \quad t > 0$$

$$U(x, 0) = U_0(x), \quad x \in R$$

define what is meant by:

- i. convergence,
 - ii. consistency,
 - iii. stability.
- b) Describe the forward Euler/centered difference method for the transport equation and derive the local truncation error.
- c) Define the Courant Friedrichs Lewy condition and state how it is related to stability.
- d) Show that the method is stable under the Courant Friedrichs Lewy condition using Von Neumann analysis, you may assume $f(x, t) = 0$.

6. Consider the second order differential equation

$$\frac{d^2 u}{dx^2} + u = x$$

with boundary conditions

$$u(0) = 0 \quad u(1) = 0$$

- a) Show that the solution $u(x)$ of this equation satisfies the weak form

$$\int_0^1 dx \left(-\frac{du}{dx} \frac{dv}{dx} + uv - xv \right) = 0$$

for all $v(x)$ which are sufficiently smooth and which satisfy

$$v(0) = 0 \quad v(1) = 0$$

- b) By splitting the interval $x \in [0, 1]$ into N equal elements of size h , where $Nh = 1$, one can define nodes x_i and finite element shape functions as follows

$$x_i = ih$$

$$\phi_i(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & 0 \leq x \leq x_{i-1} \\ \frac{x-x_{i-1}}{h} & x_{i-1} \leq x \leq x_i \\ \frac{x_{i+1}-x}{h} & x_i \leq x \leq x_{i+1} \\ 0 & x_{i+1} \leq x \leq 1 \end{cases}$$

A finite element approximation to the differential equation is obtained by approximating $u(x)$ and $v(x)$ with linear combinations of these finite element shape functions, ϕ_i , where

$$u_n = \sum_{i=1}^{N-1} \alpha_i \phi_i(x)$$

$$v_n = \sum_{j=1}^{N-1} \beta_j \phi_j(x)$$

Show that the equation which results from this approximation has the form

$$K\alpha = F$$

where K is an $(N-1) \times (N-1)$ sparse matrix, F is an $(N-1)$ component vector and α is an $(N-1)$ component vector of unknown co-efficient α_i .

- c) What structure does the matrix K have? Evaluate the first component of the main diagonal of K .

BIBLIOGRAPHY

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- [1] Ian Jaques and Colin Judd, *Numerical Anaylsis*, Chapman and Hall Ltd, 1987
- [2] J. Stoer and R. Bulirsch, *Introduction to Numerical Analysis*, Springer-Verlag 1980
- [3] Walter Gautschi, *Numerical Analysis an Introduction*, Birkhauser 1997
- [4] Curtis F. Gerald, Patrick O. Wheatley, *Applied Numerical Analysis*, Addison-Wesley 1994
- [5] Richard L. Burden, J. Douglas Faires, *Numerical Analysis*, Brooks/Cole 1997
- [6] Myron B Allen III, Eli L. Isaacson *Numerical Analysis for Applied Science* John Wiley and Sons, Inc. 1997
- [7] G D Smith *Numerical Solution of Partial Differential Equations: Finite Difference Method* Oxford 1992
- [8] Atkinson, Han *Elementary Numerical Analysis*
- [9] Alfio Quarteroni, Riccardo Sacco, Fausto Saleri *Numerical Mathematics*
- [10] John H Mathews, Kurtis Fink *Numerical Method using MATLAB*
- [11] Brian Bradie, *A Friendly Introduction to Numerical Analysis*

INDEX

INDEX

Adams predictor-corrector, 54
Adams-Bashforth, 34–36, 38–41,
46, 48, 49, 58
Adams-Bashforth method, 45, 55
Adams-Moulton, 35, 41–43, 45,
46, 48, 49, 54, 58

Boundary Value Problem, 68, 72
boundary value problem, 66, 67,
69, 70, 77

Heat equation, 82, 84

Initial Value Problem, 16, 29, 34,
38, 53, 54, 64, 65, 67, 69,
70, 72, 73

Lipschitz Condition, 12–14, 16,
17, 28, 29, 52, 53, 64, 65,
68
Lipschitz condition, 69

Newton's method, 72

ODE, 6
Ordinary Differential Equation,
6, 9, 14, 15, 21

PDE, 79–81, 89, 90, 95, 101, 103,
105–107, 109, 134
Poisson equation, 121, 136

Runge-Kutta method, 23, 24, 29